



Series on Bibliographic Control
Vol 38

UNIMARC Manual Authorities Format

3rd Edition

Edited by Mirna Willer

K · G · Saur



International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions
Fédération Internationale des Associations de Bibliothécaires et des Bibliothèques
Internationaler Verband der bibliothekarischen Vereine und Institutionen
Международная Федерация Библиотечных Ассоциаций и Учреждений
Federación Internacional de Asociaciones de Bibliotecarios y Bibliotecas
国际图书馆协会与机构联合会

الاتحاد الدولي لجمعيات ومؤسسات المكتبات

About IFLA

www.ifla.org

IFLA (The International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions) is the leading international body representing the interests of library and information services and their users. It is the global voice of the library and information profession.

IFLA provides information specialists throughout the world with a forum for exchanging ideas and promoting international cooperation, research, and development in all fields of library activity and information service. IFLA is one of the means through which libraries, information centres, and information professionals worldwide can formulate their goals, exert their influence as a group, protect their interests, and find solutions to global problems.

IFLA's aims, objectives, and professional programme can only be fulfilled with the cooperation and active involvement of its members and affiliates. Currently, approximately 1,600 associations, institutions and individuals, from widely divergent cultural backgrounds, are working together to further the goals of the Federation and to promote librarianship on a global level. Through its formal membership, IFLA directly or indirectly represents some 500,000 library and information professionals worldwide.

IFLA pursues its aims through a variety of channels, including the publication of a major journal, as well as guidelines, reports and monographs on a wide range of topics. IFLA organizes workshops and seminars around the world to enhance professional practice and increase awareness of the growing importance of libraries in the digital age. All this is done in collaboration with a number of other non-governmental organizations, funding bodies and international agencies such as UNESCO and WIPO. IFLANET, the Federation's website, is a prime source of information about IFLA, its policies and activities: www.ifla.org

Library and information professionals gather annually at the IFLA World Library and Information Congress, held in August each year in cities around the world.

IFLA was founded in Edinburgh, Scotland, in 1927 at an international conference of national library directors. IFLA was registered in the Netherlands in 1971. The Koninklijke Bibliotheek (Royal Library), the national library of the Netherlands, in The Hague, generously provides the facilities for our headquarters. Regional offices are located in Rio de Janeiro, Brazil; Pretoria, South Africa; and Singapore.

IFLA Series on Bibliographic Control Vol 38

UNIMARC Manual Authorities Format

3rd Edition

Edited by Mirna Willer

K · G · Saur München 2009

IFLA Series on Bibliographic Control

edited by Sjoerd Koopman

The “IFLA Series on Bibliographic Control” continues the former “UBCIM Publications – New Series”.

Bibliographic information published by the Deutsche Nationalbibliothek

The Deutsche Nationalbibliothek lists this publication in the Deutsche Nationalbibliografie; detailed bibliographic data is available in the Internet at <http://dnb.d-nb.de>.



Printed on acid-free paper / Gedruckt auf säurefreiem Papier

© 2009 by International Federation of Library Associations
and Institutions, The Hague, The Netherlands

Alle Rechte vorbehalten / All Rights Strictly Reserved

K. G. Saur Verlag, München

An Imprint of Walter de Gruyter GmbH & Co. KG

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system of any nature, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

Printed in the Federal Republic of Germany by Strauss GmbH, Mörlenbach

ISBN 978-3-598-24286-1

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Foreword to the Third Edition	7
Members of the IFLA Permanent UNIMARC Committee	10
Foreword to the Second Edition	11
Foreword to the First Edition	12
Introduction	14
Purpose and Scope	14
Use	14
Format Maintenance	14
Standards	15
Other Related Documents	15
Definitions	16
Guidelines for Format Design	19
Functional Blocks	20
Guidelines for Use	21
Mandatory Fields	21
Control Functions	21
Field and Subfield Repetition	21
Subfield Order	21
Fill Character	21
Coded Data Values	22
Punctuation	22
Format Use	22
Types of Records	22
Authority Records	22
Reference Records	23
General Explanatory Record	24
Relationships Between Access Points	24
Parallel Data	24
Alternative Script Data	25
Different Rule Data	26
Composite Access Points	27
Outline of Content of Records	28
Correspondence Between UNIMARC/Authorities and UNIMARC/Bibliographic	29
Display of Reference and Authority Records	30
Explanatory Notes	31
Field List	32
Format	35
Record Label	35
Directory	39
0-- Identification Block	40
1-- Coded Information Block	60
Control Subfields	87
2-- Authorized Access Point Block	110
3-- Notes Block	153
4-- Variant Access Point Block	172

Table of Contents

5--	Related Access Point Block	199
6--	Classification and Entity History Block	228
7--	Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script Block	240
8--	Source Information Block	264
9--	National Use Block	281
Appendix L: Complete Examples		282
Appendix O: Format Changes		304

FOREWORD TO THE THIRD EDITION

The third edition of the UNIMARC Authorities format is evidence of the last decade's intensive developments and change of concept in the field of Universal Bibliographic Control, and, in particular, in the field of authority control, brought about by the necessity for efficient and economical sharing of authority data in the web environment in order to meet the needs of users in a qualitative and authoritative way.

The list of changes to the format since the publication of *UNIMARC Manual: Authorities Format*, 2nd revised and enlarged edition in 2001 points to that fact.

The publication of the 2nd edition of *Guidelines for Authority and Reference Records* (GARR), immediately following the publication of the *UNIMARC Manual* in 2001, brought about what can be called a paradigm shift in the concept of UBC which has proved to have seminal impact on the further developments in the field. The UBC concept of requiring the use of the same form for headings globally, i.e., a uniform heading, is considered “not practical and [...] no longer necessary”, because “with computer capabilities developing more sophistication, we can link the authority records created in one country according to one set of cataloguing rules with those in another country to facilitate sharing of authority records and potentially to enable computer-assisted switching to display authorized forms”.¹ The Guidelines subsequently change the terminology, and instead of the term “uniform heading” promote the use of “authorized heading”, although “uniform title” is preserved as a *terminus technicus* for the authorized form by which variant titles are collocated. It should also be noted that the Guidelines retain the 7 International Standard Authority Data Number area, yet they refer their reader to the discussions about the purpose and use of the ISADN which was started by the IFLA UBCIM Working Group on Minimal Level Authority Records and ISADN (MLAR),² and followed up by the IFLA Working Group on Functional Requirements and Numbering of Authority Records (FRANAR).

The IFLA Meeting of Experts on an International Cataloguing Code's *Statement of International Cataloguing Principles* published in February 2009³ confirm the new concept and the terminology of “authorized access point”, more precisely, “controlled access points” within the domain of the authority control. The issue of the ISADN is being dealt with in the report prepared by Barbara B. Tillett for the IFLA Working Group on FRANAR and published under the title *A Review of the Feasibility of an International Standard Authority Data Number (ISADN)*. The report, also approved by the Standing Committee of the IFLA Cataloguing Section, recommends that “IFLA should not pursue the idea of an International Standard Authority Data Number (ISADN) as it has been defined”, and that “IFLA should continue to monitor the pro-

¹ Guidelines for Authority Records and References. – 2nd ed. / revised by the Working Group on GARE Revision. – München : K. G. Saur, 2001, p. ix.

² Mandatory Data Elements for Internationally Shared Resource Authority Records : Report of the IFLA UBCIM Working Group on Minimal Level Authority Records and ISADN. – [Frankfurt/Main] : IFLA Universal Bibliographic Control and International MARC Programme, 1998 (accessed: 2009-06-14). Available from: <http://archive.ifla.org/VI/3/p1996-2/mlar.htm>

³ Statement of International Cataloguing Principles (February 2009) (accessed: 2009-06-14). Available from: <http://www.ifla.org/en/publications/statement-of-international-cataloguing-principles>

gress of efforts of the ISO ISNI (International Standard Name Identifier) Working Group and the VIAF Project⁴ and any potential numbering that may result from those efforts”.⁵

The major undertaking of the Working Group on FRANAR, however, is the design of the conceptual model for authority data, based on the entity-relationship analysis technique which was introduced to the field of bibliographic control by *Functional Requirements for Bibliographic Records* (FRBR) in 1998.⁶ The *Functional Requirements for Authority Data: A Conceptual Model* (FRAD) prepared by the Working Group and published in June 2009⁷ continue the work which the FRBR initiated by extending the model to authority data. Entities, which are the key objects of interest to users of authority data, and defined to form the fundamental basis for the FRAD conceptual model are Bibliographic Entities (those defined by the FRBR with additional entity Family), Name and/or Identifier, and Controlled Access Point. The relationships between these entities are defined as follows: *bibliographic entity* (e.g., a person) may be known by one or more *names* (appellation relationship), or can be assigned one or more *identifiers* (assignment relationship); names and identifiers serve as the basis for *controlled access points* which are eventually recorded in bibliographic or some other types of systems.⁸ Apart from the relationships between these primary entity types, FRAD specifies relationships between specific instances of these entities, such as relationships between bibliographic entities (e.g., person to person: pseudonymous or sibling relationship), relationships between various names of entities (e.g., earlier/later name relationship), and between controlled access points (e.g., parallel language or different rules relationships). The controlled access points are governed by *rules*, which in turn are applied by (bibliographic) *agencies*, two additional entities defined by the model.

The FRAD's clarity of concepts and precision in naming entities and their relationships influenced the change of terminology, definition of fields, and control subfield \$5, Relationship Control in *UNIMARC Manual: Authorities Format*. The blocks are renamed to 2-- Authorized Access Point, 4-- Variant Access Point, 5-- Related Access Point, and 7-- Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script, while tags designate names of the entities which the controlled access points represent, such as Personal Name, Corporate Body Name, Title. The new edition also shows the consistency with definitions of entities published in the *Statement of International Cataloguing Principles* (ICP). The vision that “computer capabilities [will] develop more sophistication” expressed in GARR's Introduction, and the recommendation that the idea of the ISADN “as has been defined” should not be pursued by IFLA, have both been incorporated into the new edition. Field 015, International Standard Authority Data Number is made obsolete, while a new field 003 Persistent Record Identifier is introduced, “open[ing] the

⁴ VIAF: The Virtual International Authority File. A joint project with the Library of Congress, the Deutsche Nationalbibliothek, the Bibliothèque nationale de France and OCLC (accessed 2009-06-14). Available from: <http://www.oclc.org/research/projects/viaf/> [reference added by M.W.].

⁵ Tillett, Barbara B. A Review of the Feasibility of an International Standard Authority Data Number (ISADN) / prepared for the IFLA Working Group on Functional Requirements and Numbering of Authority Records, edited by Glenn E. Patton, 1 July 2008 ; approved by the Standing Committee of the IFLA Cataloguing Section, 15 September 2008 (accessed: 2009-06-14). Available from: <http://archive.ifla.org/VII/d4/franar-numbering-paper.pdf>, p. 1.

⁶ Functional Requirements for Bibliographic Records : Final Report / IFLA Study Group on the Functional Requirements for Bibliographic Records. – München : K. G. Saur, 1998. Electronic version (accessed 2009-06-14) available from: <http://archive.ifla.org/VII/s13/frbr/frbr.pdf>

⁷ Functional Requirements for Authority Data : A Conceptual Model / edited by Glenn Patton ; IFLA Working Group on Functional Requirements and Numbering of Authority Records (FRANAR). – Final Report, December 2008 / approved by the Standing Committees of the IFLA Cataloguing Section and IFLA Classification and Indexing Section, March 2009. – München : K. G. Saur, 2009.

⁸ Note that FRAD is a conceptual model and does not implicate any particular implementation: “the model focuses on data, regardless of how it may be packaged (e.g. in authority records)”, p. 1.

possibilities of the UNIMARC authority record to be used in the web environment and by semantic web tools”.⁹

The new edition is also based on the 3rd edition of the *UNIMARC Manual: Bibliographic Format*,¹⁰ published in 2008, by which the two corresponding formats are updated, as well as on the comments and proposals from UNIMARC users and the members of the Permanent UNIMARC Committee. The extensions of the format include new fields such as music incipit, identifiers ISTC, ISWC, ISAN and ISRC, printer/publisher device, conventional name/title for legal and religious texts, and activity note pertaining to printer/publisher. It also includes changes in name and function of the fields such as biography and activity note, and place and date of publication, performance, provenance, etc. It is hoped that these, and other changes and additions to the UNIMARC Authorities format will promote values that IFLA stands for, and further the international sharing of authority data.

Mirna Willer
June 2009

⁹ See Definition and Notes on Field Contents of the 003 field.

¹⁰ UNIMARC Manual : Bibliographic Format. – 3rd edition edited by Alan Hopkinson. – München : K. G. Saur, 2008.

MEMBERS OF THE IFLA PERMANENT UNIMARC COMMITTEE

Liubovė Buckienė
Lietuvos nacionalinė Martyno Mažvydo biblioteka, Vilnius, Lietuva

Joanna Demopoulos
Εθνική Βιβλιοθήκη της Ελλάδας, Αθήνα, Ελλάδα

Rosa Maria Galvão
Biblioteca Nacional de Portugal, Lisboa, Portugal

Alan Hopkinson, Chair
Middlesex University, London, UK

Cristina Magliano
ICCU: Istituto centrale per il catalogo unico delle biblioteche italiane e per le informazioni bibliografiche, Roma, Italia

Agnès Manneheut
Agence bibliographique de l'enseignement supérieur, Montpellier, France

Vladimir Skvortsov (until March 2009)
Российская национальная библиотека, Санкт-Петербург, Россия

Jay Weitz, Vice Chair
OCLC, Dublin, OH, USA

Olga Zhlobinskaya (from March 2009)
Российская национальная библиотека, Санкт-Петербург, Россия

UNIMARC Core Activity

Maria Inês Cordeiro, Director
Biblioteca Nacional de Portugal, Lisboa, Portugal

Consultant

Mirna Willer, Honorary Member and Special Consultant
Sveučilište u Zadru, Zadar, Hrvatska

FOREWORD TO THE SECOND EDITION

This new edition of the UNIMARC Authorities format is the first revision since the format was published in 1991. That such a long period should elapse without revision testifies to the foresight and expertise of the *IFLA Steering Group on UNIMARC Format for Authorities*.

Responsibility for maintenance of the format now resides with the *Permanent UNIMARC Committee*. At its meeting in Zagreb in 1997, the *PUC* decided to prepare a new edition of the *UNIMARC Authorities Format*. The proposals for revision were agreed at the meeting in Lisbon in February 2000.

The revisions reflect developments in telecommunications and information technology and consequent evolution of the possibilities for universal bibliographic control. The development of communications protocols such as FTP and Z39.50 (ISO 23950) and more recently the explosion of the Internet and the World Wide Web has created an infrastructure in which bibliographic records can be freely and easily exchanged.

Despite projects such as the European project *AUTHOR*¹¹, which demonstrated methodologies for sharing authority data, the exchange of authority data has lagged behind. *IFLA* established the *Working Group on Minimal Level Authority Records and International Standard Authority Data Number*¹² to investigate the barriers to exchange of authority data. The recommendations of the MLAR group included the definition of data elements that should be mandatory in all authority records in order to facilitate exchange and reuse of authority data. The new edition incorporates these recommendations.

When the first edition was published the Internet was virtually unknown and the World Wide Web did not exist. They are now pervasive and changes have been implemented to support links to Web resources and to facilitate web cataloguing. The development of a shared environment means that we are more and more dependent on each other. *PUC* has recognized this by tracking developments in other authority formats and adopting them for *UNIMARC/A*. There is no substitute for practical experience; the *PUC* could not develop the format without the recommendations for improvement received from *UNIMARC* users. Finally, to make use of the format easier the content and style are updated for consistency with the *UNIMARC Bibliographic Format*.

The pace of change is accelerating and therefore it is unlikely that the format will remain stable for the next ten years. As previously mentioned, the evolution of *UNIMARC* is determined in large part by the requirements of the users. Details of how the format is maintained will be found in the Introduction below.

Mirna Willer, *Chair Permanent UNIMARC Committee*

¹¹ *AUTHOR: transnational application of national name authority Files; final report, June 1998*. <http://www.bl.uk/information/author.pdf>

¹² *Mandatory data elements for internationally shared resource authority records: report of the IFLA UCBIM Working Group on Minimal Level Authority Records and ISADN. IFLA UCBIM, 1998*. <http://www.ifla.org/VI/3/p1996-2/mlar.htm>

FOREWORD TO THE FIRST EDITION

The establishment of UNIMARC as the format for the international exchange of bibliographic records created an immediate need to develop a companion format to transmit the records for authoritative forms of headings. IFLA responded to this need by first developing a standard for content and display of authority information: *Guidelines for Authority and Reference Entries* (GARE). GARE sets forth the data elements that appear in authority and reference entries in eye-readable form. It thus serves as a foundation for building the machine format, UNIMARC/Authorities, to exchange the specified data.

Since UNIMARC/Authorities is part of the UNIMARC group of interdependent formats there are several standards to which it must adhere. These relate to the three basic parts of a machine-readable record format:

- 1) The structure of the record, which is the physical representation and layout of the information.
- 2) The content designators for the record, which identify and supply information about elements.
- 3) The data content of the record, which are the data that are being communicated.

First the authorities format must be structure-compatible with UNIMARC, since the two types of records will be used together in systems. Thus the International Organization for Standardization standard format for bibliographic information interchange (ISO 2709) must be utilized choosing the same options as in UNIMARC. Second, the content designation for headings must be the same as that used in UNIMARC, where the same data elements appear in both formats. The interaction of headings in bibliographic and authority records should not be burdened with differences in content designation, since the degree of compatibility will have a direct effect on the ease of understanding and use of the format. This generally means subfields should correspond for like data elements, although tagging will differ because of the different functions of data elements in bibliographic and authority records. Also, the user of the UNIMARC formats is best served if the same guidelines for design are used in this format wherever the concepts correspond. Another standard that the format must follow is the new GARE. The basic data elements in certain types of authority records are specified by the GARE, which identifies the headings, relationships, and information that comprise authority entries and reference entries.

The form of the data recorded in the authority record is subject to the rules and codes used by an agency that creates the record. There are, however, recommendations that have been published by IFLA for the form of headings, such as *Form and Structure of Corporate Headings*, and these should be followed where possible. The IFLA recommendations are used by or influence many cataloguing codes.

An individual agency using UNIMARC/Authorities will have its own rules and conventions for when records are created, what references are included in records, and how parallel headings forms are carried in records. For example, an agency may make no authority records for personal names, or may set a numerical limit to cross references. This format can still be used by such agencies, although agencies that receive their records should be made aware of the conventions of the sending agency.

When a model for an international authority system is worked out by IFLA, targets for data element requirements may be set so that records exchanged internationally will have more con-

sistency. Such a model may also indicate the need to add data elements to UNIMARC/ Authorities in order to accommodate and facilitate exchange in a world-wide environment.

The IFLA group responsible for the GARE was the IFLA Working Group on an International Authority System which was organized in 1979 by the Section on Information Technology and the Section on Cataloguing to carry out a number of tasks relating to the international exchange of authority data. In 1983, that work was largely completed with the submission of the GARE to IFLA committees for approval. That Working Group suggested that one task, the development of a format, be undertaken immediately. Thus the Steering Group on a UNIMARC Format for Authorities was formed with the following members:

Marie-Louise Bachmann, Kungliga Biblioteket, Stockholm
Christine Boßmeyer, Chairperson, Deutsche Bibliothek, Frankfurt
Diana B. Dack, National Library of Australia, Canberra
Tom Delsey, National Library of Canada, Ottawa
J. M. Feyen, Pica Samenwerkingsverband, Koninklijke Bibliotheek, Den Haag
Françoise Finelli-Lemelle, Bibliothèque Nationale, Paris
Günter Franzmeier, Staatsbibliothek Preußischer Kulturbesitz, Berlin
Paula Goossens, Koninklijke Bibliotheek Albert I., Brussels
Anthony Long, The British Library, London

The project editor for the UNIMARC/Authorities format was Sally McCallum. The Steering Group was responsible for general advice and for comments on draft texts. This work was mainly carried out by correspondence. Three successive drafts were sent out to all Steering Group members for comment: 1st draft 1984-26-05; 2nd draft 1985-10-21; 3rd draft 1987-03-13. Based on the comments received the 4th draft was prepared for wider distribution and comment. In February of 1988 the 4th draft was circulated to members of the Section on Cataloguing and the Section on Information Technology.

In closing, I would like to thank Sally McCallum who carried the main burden in drafting the format and preparing the documents, and all members of the Steering Group who contributed so much of their time and effort to the development of the UNIMARC/Authorities format.

Christine Boßmeyer
May 1989

INTRODUCTION

Purpose and Scope

The primary purpose of *UNIMARC Manual: Authorities Format* is to facilitate the international exchange of authority data in machine-readable form among national bibliographic agencies.

UNIMARC Manual: Authorities Format specifies the tags, indicators and subfield identifiers to be assigned to authority, reference, and general explanatory entry records in machine-readable form. These records are created to provide guidance on the use in a catalogue of names (personal, family, corporate, meeting, geographic, trademark and printer/publisher device), titles for works not entered under specific authors, titles for works by individual authors, and topical subjects. These names, titles and topical subjects are used on bibliographic records as primary, secondary and alternative responsibility access points, as series access points, and as subject access points.

The record format takes into account the requirements specified in *Guidelines for Authority and Reference Records* (GARR) for records involving names and titles for anonymous classics, and in *Guidelines for Subject Authority and Reference Entries* (GSARE) for subjects. It also takes into account attributes of the entities and entity relationships as specified in the *Functional Requirements for Authority Data: Conceptual Model* (FRAD), and definitions of appropriate entities as specified in the *Statement of International Cataloguing Principles* (ICP).

Authority records for series entries are limited to access point information in this format. Series treatment data that is included in authority records by some agencies is not accommodated.

Use

Each national bibliographic agency is responsible for the conversion of authority records into UNIMARC Authorities format for transmission to other national agencies and can receive machine-readable records in the UNIMARC Authorities format from other national agencies. The *UNIMARC Manual: Authorities Format* is intended to provide the information required for a range of bibliographic activities. It therefore includes content designation which may be essential to one or another of these activities, but not to all.

Format Maintenance

UNIMARC is maintained by an IFLA committee, the Permanent UNIMARC Committee (PUC), for which the secretariat is the IFLA UNIMARC Core Activity. Future changes to the format will be primarily defining additional fields, subfields and coded values where needed. Proposals for change will usually originate with those creating UNIMARC records or those using UNIMARC records. Changes will be made only through the Permanent UNIMARC Committee. UNIMARC will not be modified to accommodate non- GARR and GSARE cataloguing practices, FRAD conceptual model or other practices contrary to the international standards on which it is based. Changes to the format may be made where a field or subfield is described as provisional.

Standards

UNIMARC Manual: Authorities Format assumes the use of the following standards:

- ISO 962 - 1974: Information processing – Implementation of the 7-bit coded character set and its 7-bit and 8-bit extensions on 9-track 12.7 mm (1/2 inch) magnetic tape
- ISO 1001 - 1986: Information processing – File structure and labelling of magnetic tapes for information interchange
- ISO/IEC 2022 – 1994: Information technology – Character code structure and extension techniques and ISO/IEC 2022/Cor.1 1999
- ISO 2375 - 1985: Data processing – Procedure for registration of escape sequences
- ISO 2709 - 1996: Information and documentation – Format for information exchange
- ISO 3166-1 1997: Codes for the representation of names of countries and their subdivisions -- Part 1: Country codes. Amendments issued occasionally; the list published in *UNIMARC Manual: Bibliographic Format*, 3rd ed. is reproduced as at 1 February 2008.
- ISO 3166-2 - 1998: Codes for the representation of names of countries and their subdivisions -- Part 2: Country subdivision codes
- ISO 3166-3 - 1999: Codes for the representation of names of countries and their subdivisions -- Part 3: Code for formerly used names of countries
- ISO 3901 - 2001: Information and documentation -- International Standard Recording Code (ISRC)
- ISO 6630 - 1986: Documentation -- Bibliographic control characters
- ISO 8601 - 2004: Data elements and interchange formats -- Information interchange -- Representation of dates and times
- ISO 15511 - 2005: International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations (ISIL)
- ISO 15706-1 - 2002: Information and documentation -- International Standard Audiovisual Number (ISAN) - Part 1: Audiovisual work identifier
- ISO 15707 - 2001: Information and documentation -- International Standard Musical Work Code (ISWC)
- ISO 21047 - 2009: Information and documentation -- International Standard Text Code (ISTC)

Other Related Documents

International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions. *Functional Requirements for Authority Data : A Conceptual Model*. – München : K. G. Saur, 2009.

International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions. *Functional Requirements for Bibliographic Records : Final Report*. – München : K. G. Saur, 1998.

International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions. *Guidelines for Authority Records and References*. – 2nd ed. – München : K. G. Saur, 2001.

International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions. *Guidelines for Subject Authority and Reference Entries*. – München : K. G. Saur, 1993.

International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions. *Statement of International Cataloguing Principles*. – 2009. Available at: <http://www.ifla.org/en/publications/statement-of-international-cataloguing-principles>

UNIMARC Manual: Bibliographic Format. – 3rd ed. – München : K. G. Saur, 2008.

DEFINITIONS

The terms defined below are those used in special sense in *UNIMARC Manual: Authorities Format*; terms used in their normal bibliographic sense are not defined. A more complete listing of definitions relating to parts of an authority record are contained in *Guidelines for Authority and Reference Records* (GARR), *Guidelines for Subject Authority and Reference Entries* (GSARE), *Functional Requirements for Authority Data* (FRAD) and *Statement of International Cataloguing Principles* (ICP).

Record Types:

Authority record – A machine-readable record for which the initial element is the authorized access point for a person, corporate body, work, trademark, printer/publisher device, topical subject, place access or form genre or physical characteristics, as established by the cataloguing agency responsible. In addition to the authorized access point, the record contains, as applicable: information notes; a record of all variant and related access points from which references have been made; authorized access points in other language an/or script; classification and entity history information; notes recording sources consulted, etc.; an identification of the cataloguing agency responsible for the entry; persistent record identifier and international standard identifiers for entities described in the record.

General explanatory record – A machine-readable record for which the initial element normally consists of a truncated or otherwise stylized or exemplary form, from which the user is directed to a general class or defined category of access points. It serves to inform the user of the list, catalogue, bibliography, etc., of a convention that applies either generally or to a defined category of access points, and to provide guidance in locating such access points.

Reference record – A machine-readable record for which the initial element is either a variant access point or an authorized access point, and which is designed to direct the user of the list, catalogue, bibliography, etc., either from the variant access point to the appropriate authorized access point (i.e., a "see" reference), or from the authorized access point to related access points (i.e., a "see also" reference). Reference records are defined only for variant access points.

Access Point Types:

Access point –

- (1) The initial element of an entry used as the principal filing element when the entry is arranged in an alphabetical listing. See also **authorized access point**, **reference access point**, and **general explanatory access point**.
- (2) The word access point may also be used in terms such as "authorized access point", "variant access point", etc., to refer to the status of an element as it relates to other similar elements, and in those cases is used independently of its function within the authority or reference record. See also **authorized access point**, **authorized access point in other language and/or script**, **related access point**, **variant access point**, and **alternative script access point**.
- (3) Terms such as "corporate name access point" and "personal name access point" and „title access point“ may be used to designate the type of access point by reference to the type of name or title on which the access point is based, without regard to its function or relationship to other access points.

Base access point – The base access point is that part of the access point that identifies the name of the entity, excluding any qualifying data. For example, in the access point 200#1\$aNicolini da Sabbio\$bDomenico\$f15-- to 160-?\$scimprimeur-libraire, the base access point is "\$aNicolini da Sabbio\$bDomenico", and the language of this base access point is Italian. The language of cataloguing being French, the qualifiers are expressed in French, i.e., "\$scimprimeur-libraire".

Controlled access point – An access point recorded in an authority record. Controlled access points include authorized forms of names as well as those designated as variant forms.

Access Points Categorized by Function Within a Record:

Authorized access point – The access point for an authority record.

Reference access point – The access point for a reference record.

General explanatory access point – The access point for a general explanatory record.

Access Points Categorized by Relationship to Other Access Points:

Authorized access point – An access point constructed using the preferred name as the basis of the form to be followed without variation.

Authorized access point in other language and/or script – An alternative form of the authorized access point based on another language and/or script form of the name, title or subject.

Related access point – One of two or more authorized access points for the name of the same or related entities, each of which is bibliographically related to the other(s).

Variant access point – An access point in a form other than that established as the authorized access point for the name of the same entity. Generally such an access point is either based on a variant name sometimes used by the person, corporate body or family itself, or sometimes used by others to identify the person, corporate body, trademark, family, printer/publisher device or work; or constructed on a pattern different from that used to establish the authorized access point. It may be an authorized subject access point that is not the entry element part.

Alternative script access point – An authorized access point represented in another script.

Record Components:

Tracing – The identification within an authority record of all access points other than authorized access point from which a reference is to be made directing the user of the list, catalogue, bibliography, etc., to and from the authorized access point which serves as the access point for the authority record. The tracing is designed to provide for the generation of references and assist the cataloguer in readily determining what references have been made.

Information note – A note of the type that is generally given in catalogues, bibliographies, etc., under a authorized access point, a reference access point, or a general explanatory access point for the purpose of explaining the relationship between that access point and other access points that are referenced from it.

Primary entity – The entity, named in the 2-- block of the record, for which the record was created. Data in the 1-- block generally pertain to characteristics of the primary entity.

Technical Elements of Records:

Content designator – The means of identifying data elements and/or providing additional information about a data element. Content designators consist of tags, indicators and subfield identifiers.

Data element – The smallest unit of information that is explicitly identified. Within a variable field, a data element is identified by a subfield identifier and it forms a subfield. Within the record label, directory, and fixed length subfields, the data elements are identified by their character positions.

Data element identifier – See subfield identifier.

Field – A defined character string, identified by a tag, which contains data.

Variable field – A field in which the length of an occurrence of the field is determined by the length (in characters) required to contain the data elements (including indicators, subfield identifiers, and the field separator) stored in that occurrence. The length may vary from one occurrence to the next. A variable field may contain one or more data elements or subfields.

Tag – A series of three characters used to specify the name or label of an associated field.

Indicator – A character (numeric or alphabetic) associated with a field which supplies additional information about the contents of the field, about the relationship between the field and other fields in the record, or about the action required in certain data manipulation processes.

Subfield – A defined unit of information within a field (see also data element).

Subfield identifier – A code consisting of two characters to identify individual subfields within a field. The first character is always control function 1/15 from ISO 646 and the second character is either numeric or alphabetic. Subfield identifiers are synonymous with data element identifiers.

Field separator – A control character used at the end of each variable field to separate it from the next field (control function 1/14 of ISO 646).

Record terminator – The final character in each record (control function 1/13 from ISO 646).

GUIDELINES FOR FORMAT DESIGN

UNIMARC is designed according to an agreed set of principles. These have been adopted for *UNIMARC Manual: Authorities Format*.

- (1) Tags should identify a field in two respects: i) the type of character string (e.g., a personal name) and ii) the function the character string performs in the record (e.g., tracing). These aspects will be shown by assigning specific values to the character positions of the tags. Tags may be both numeric and alphabetic. First assignment will be numeric values, expanded to alphabetic values (lower case preferred) when required.
- (2) Indicators should be tag dependent but used as consistently as possible across all fields. Indicators may be both numeric and alphabetic. First assignment will be numeric values, expanded to alphabetic values (lower case preferred) when required.
- (3) Subfield identifiers will be tag dependent, but, as far as possible, common data elements will be identified by the same subfield identifiers across fields. Subfield identifiers may be both numeric and alphabetic. First assignment will be alphabetic values (lower case preferred), expanded to numeric values when required. Subfield identifiers will be given values for identification rather than for file arrangement. There will be no specified order for subfield identifiers, as order is determined by the data.
- (4) The fields on an authority record have been regarded as relating primarily to broad categories of information such as "Authorized Access Point," "Related Access Point," etc. In a machine-readable record the primary grouping of fields will be according to these fundamental categories.
- (5) Descriptive information carried in notes is not intended for use as access points.

FUNCTIONAL BLOCKS

The fields of the authority or reference record are divided into functional blocks; the first (left most) digit of the tag indicates the block of the field.

- 0-- Identification Block: contains numbers that identify the record or the entity for which the record has been created.
- 1-- Coded Information Block: contains fixed length data elements (frequently coded) describing various aspects of the record or data.
- 2-- Authorized Access Point Block: contains the authorized, reference, or general explanatory access point for which the record has been created.
- 3-- Notes Block: contains notes, intended for public display, that: 1) explain the relationship between the record access point (2--) and other access points; 2) contribute to the identification of the entity described in the authority record.
- 4-- Variant Access Point Block: contains variant access points from which a reference is to be made to see the access point of the record.
- 5-- Related Access Point Block: contains related authorized access points from which a reference is to be made to see also the access point of the record.
- 6-- Classification and Entity History Block: contains classification numbers and information, as well as specific entity history information that are related to the access point of the record.
- 7-- Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script Block: contains a form of the record access point (2--) in another language and/or script and links to another record in which that form is the 2-- authorized access point.
- 8-- Source Information Block: contains the source of the record, and cataloguer's notes about the data not intended for public display.
- 9-- National Use Block: contains data local to the originator of the record. Field tags will not be defined in *UNIMARC Manual: Authorities Format* for intersystem exchange.

GUIDELINES FOR USE

(1) Mandatory Fields

In addition to the Record Label and Directory, the following fields must be present in the machine-readable records:

- 001 Record Identifier
- 100 General Processing Data (certain data elements only)
- 152 Rules
- 2-- Authorized Access Point
- 801 Originating Source

The presence of other fields depends upon the particular record being converted into machine-readable form. The data content of a record is controlled by the cataloguing code and practice of the bibliographic agency responsible for the creation of the record, i.e., the presence or absence of a data element is determined, not only by format specifications, but by the national cataloguing code or practice. However, if a data element is present, it must be fully content designated according to the prescriptions defined in this document. Elements of information that are represented in coded form are generally not specified by cataloguing codes. Certain of these coded data elements are mandatory and are so identified in the format.

(2) Control Functions

Control functions permitted in *UNIMARC Manual: Authorities Format* are confined to those used for subfield codes, field separators, and record terminator, as specified in ISO 2709; character set escape sequences as specified in ISO 2022; and those for indicating filing information, superscripts, and subscripts as specified in ISO 6630. No control functions are allowed to specify typographical functions such as italics. The use of control functions in *UNIMARC Manual: Authorities Format* records is fully described in the *UNIMARC Manual: Bibliographic Format*, Appendix J.

(3) Field and Subfield Repetition

If the word "repeatable" is associated with a field, then that field may occur more than once in a record. If R (= repeatable) is associated with a subfield identifier, then that subfield may occur more than one time in an occurrence of the field.

(4) Subfield Order

There is no specified order implied in the values of the subfield identifiers. Subfield identifiers are assigned values for identification purposes, not for file arrangement. When control subfields are used in the field, they precede all other subfields in that field.

(5) Fill Character

A complete record, fully content designated, is naturally the preferred record for international exchange purposes. In some cases, however, it may not be possible to convert a national record into the *UNIMARC Manual: Authorities Format* and provide the full content designation

and coded information as prescribed. To minimize the ambiguities that could result if the indication of this lack of information were left to the discretion of each national agency faced with the circumstances described above, a character, hereafter referred to where this occurs as a "fill character", is used in place of the required information. This character will be the "|" (vertical line, code table position 7/12 in ISO 646).

The fill character can be used whenever a content designator or coded information cannot be determined by the encoding agency. It thus occurs in the following situations: i) encoding agency does not use this content designator or code this information, or ii) encoding agency uses this content designator or codes this information but in this particular record does not know the correct value, or iii) encoding agency uses similar values for this content designator or coded information but they cannot be translated to the exact *UNIMARC Manual: Authorities Format* equivalents.

The following rules apply to the use of the fill character: fill characters may only be used for indicators and coded data values that are not mandatory, thus fill characters may *not* be used in the Record Label or Directory, as subfield identifiers or to replace punctuation or other special characters in the data portion of fields.

(6) Coded Data Values

The following conventions are used in the assignment of coded values in the Record Label and coded data subfields:

- u - Unknown. Used when codes are being assigned, but the appropriate specific value cannot be determined.
- v - Combination. Used when a combination of the individual coded characteristics occur in the entity.
- x - Not applicable. Used when a characteristic is not appropriate for the *type* of entity being described.
- y - Not present. Used when the characteristic being coded is not present for the entity being described.
- z - Other. Used when codes are being assigned and the characteristics of the entity are known, but none of the defined codes is appropriate.
- | - Fill character. Used when no attempt is being made to assign the codes.

(7) Punctuation

GARR prescribed punctuation is not carried at the subfield boundaries. GARR prescribed punctuation consists of = (used with parallel access points), <, >, <<, and >> symbols (used with tracings), ; and , (used in the source area).

All other punctuation in access points, notes, etc., is carried in the record according to the practice of the bibliographic agency issuing the record. Examples in this manual reflect different kinds of practices in introducing punctuation at the subfield borders.

(8) Format Use

Types of Records:

Authority Records

This format is designed to support primarily the communication of *authority records* for authorized access points. These records may also carry *tracings* of variant or related authorized access points (as outlined in GARR, 0.3.1) from which reference records are generated for display. A 4-- field is used for a "see from" reference tracing containing a variant form of the

authorized access point. A 5-- field is used for a "see also from" reference tracing containing a related authorized access point. The reference record can be generated from a tracing as desired for display.

Example:

```
210 02$aPittsburgh Research Center [authorized access point]
410 01$aUnited States.$bBureau of Mines.$bPittsburgh Research Center [variant access
point as see reference tracing]
510 02$5a$aPittsburgh Mining and Safety Research Center [related access point as see
also reference tracing]
```

In exceptional cases, references are carried in authority entry records in note form: field 305, Textual See Also Reference Note. Reference notes are used when a reference is too complex to be adequately constructed from one or more tracings. The 2-- authorized access point is also generally traced as see also reference tracing in a 5-- field of each of the records for access points mentioned in the 305 note. Such tracings would usually have the Reference Suppression Code in the \$5 subfield set to suppress automatic generation of a simple reference, since the 305 reference note provides the reference.

Example:

Record 1 (Authority record)

```
200 #1$aJapp,$bAlexander H.
```

```
305 0#$aFor works of this author written under pseudonyms, see also$bGray, E. Con-
dor$aand$bPage, H.A. [related access points in textual see also reference note]
```

Record 2 (Authority record)

```
200 #1$aGray,$bE. Condor
```

```
500 #1$5z0$aJapp,$bAlexander H. [related access point as see also reference tracing with
display suppressed]
```

Record 3 (Authority record)

```
200 #1$aPage,$bH.A.
```

```
500 #1$5z0$aJapp,$bAlexander H. [related access point as see also reference tracing with
display suppressed]
```

Reference Records

Reference records for variant access points are only made when see references are too complex to be adequately generated from see reference tracings in authority records. The reference record contains the variant access point in the 2-- field and a 310 Textual See Reference Note. The 2-- access point is also generally traced as a see reference tracing in a 4-- field of the authority record for each of the authorized access points referred to in the 310 note. These tracings would generally have the Reference Suppression Code in the \$5 subfield set to suppress automatic generation of a simple reference, since the reference record provides the reference.

Example:

Record 1 (Reference record)

```
200 #1$aKacew$bRomain [variant access point as reference access point]
```

```
310 0#$aÉcrit sous deux pseudonymes$bAjar, Émile$bGary, Romain [textual see refer-
ence note]
```


Record 2 (Authority record)

200 #1\$aAjar\$bÉmile

400 #1\$5z0\$aKacew\$bRomain [variant access point as see reference tracing with display suppressed]

Record 3 (Authority record)

200 #1\$aGary\$bRomain

400 #1\$5z0\$aKacew\$bRomain [variant access point as see reference tracing with display suppressed]

General Explanatory Records

General explanatory records are made when see references from explanatory access points are required. The general explanatory record contains an explanatory access point in the 2-- field and a 320 General Explanatory Reference Note. The 2-- explanatory access point is not traced on any authority records.

Example:

210 12\$aConference... [general explanatory access point]

320 ##\$aConference proceedings are entered under the name of the conference, etc., or the title of the publication if the conference, etc., lacks a name. Thus, see also: Symposium..., Workshop..., etc., [general explanatory reference note]

Relationships Between Access Points:

Parallel Data

Option 1

A general principle for the construction of a record using this format is that one form of one access point is being described and that access point is appropriate for a catalogue in the language designated by the 100 field. The reference tracings constitute the reference structure for that access point in that catalogue.

If a cataloguing agency needs to construct a parallel catalogue based on another language, the agency may want to transmit equivalent or parallel language forms of the 2-- access point and the notes and tracings appropriate to the parallel access points. It is not recommended that the notes and tracings for the parallel access points based on language differences be co-resident in a single authority record. In using this format, these parallel access points should have separate authority records in which they are the authorized access point and where their reference structure will be recorded in the 4-- and 5-- reference tracing and 3-- note fields.

Note that when these parallel access points are in a different script, in addition to being in a different language, they are still encoded following the rules for parallel data. If the access points are in a different script but the *same* language as their corresponding fields then the rules for alternative scripts should be followed.

The records for the different formulations of the access point designed for different language catalogues may be linked through the 7-- authorized access point in other language and/or script fields. In each authority record, each parallel access point and its associated *authority record identifier* (subfield \$3) may be recorded in 7-- fields.

Example:

Record 1

001 12345

210 02\$aNational Library of Canada

<Notes and tracings for an English language catalogue>
 710 02\$367890\$8frefre\$aBibliothèque nationale du Canada

Record 2
 001 67890
 210 02\$aBibliothèque nationale du Canada
 <Notes and tracings for a French language catalogue>
 710 02\$312345\$8engeng\$aNational Library of Canada

Option 2

Alternatively, an agency may treat parallel forms of the 2-- authorized access point as simple variants or references: 4-- or 5-- reference tracings with or without specifying language. The reference structures of the parallel forms are *not* needed and are not included in the record. The choice of technique depends on the practices of the establishing agency.

Example:

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDaswey0103####ba0
 215 ##\$8sweswe\$aSverige
 415 ##\$8sweeng\$aSweden
 415 ##\$8swerus\$aSveciâ
 415 ##\$8swefre\$aSuède

It should be noted that a distinction is made for a given record between:

- 1) the language of cataloguing, used for the qualifiers in the access points (2--), variant access points (4--), related access points (5--), authorized access points in other language and/or script (7--), and for notes (3--) and information phrases (\$0);
- 2) the language of the base access point, that is to say the part of the access point that identifies the entity excluding any qualifying data. For example: in the access point 200#1\$aNicolini da Sabbio\$bDomenico\$f15-- to 160-?\$cimprimeur-libraire, the base access point is "\$aNicolini da Sabbio\$bDomenico", and the language of this base access point is Italian. The language of cataloguing being French, the qualifiers are expressed in French, i.e., "\$cimprimeur-libraire".

Alternative Script Data

The script of cataloguing (access point, notes, tracings, etc.) is identified in the 100 field of the record. Some agencies need to record access points, notes, and tracings in more than one script form because of transliteration and alternative script orthographies used for a language (e.g., kana and kanji scripts for Japanese; devanagari, khmer, and lao scripts for Pali). Alternative script representations of the access points, notes, and the tracings may be co-resident in an authority record or may reside in separate linked records. Note, however, that if the alternative script representations differ in language from their corresponding access points, then the rules for parallel data apply.

When the alternative script representations are co-resident, then the alternative script forms of the 2-- record access point are recorded in repeatable 2-- access point fields, with a \$7 Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point subfield that indicates the difference from the script defined in the 100 field. The alternative script forms of notes or tracings are carried as repeated tags in their respective blocks. The various script forms of the same note or tracing are linked through a \$6 linking subfield and the scripts are identified by a \$7 Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point subfield.

Example:

```
001 82-6290
100 ##$aYYYYMMDDaengy0103####ba0
200 #1$7ba0yba0a$8engrus$aGlinka,$bMihail Ivanovič
200 #1$7ba0yca0y$8engrus$aГлинка,$bМихаил Иванович
```

If the alternative script representations reside in separate records, then the records are linked through 7-- authorized access point fields which contain the alternative script form of the 2-- field. The 7-- contains a \$7 Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point subfield. The record control number of the authority record for the alternative script form of the access point may be recorded in the 7-- field.

Examples:

EX 1

```
Record 1
100 ##$aYYYYMMDDaengy0102####ba0
215 ##$aUnited States
415 ##$aUSA
715 ##$7ca0yca0y$8rusrus$aСоединенные штаты
```

```
Record 2
100 ##$aYYYYMMDDarusy0102####ca0
215 ##$aСоединенные штаты
415 ##$aСША
715 ##$7ba0yba0y$8engeng$aUnited States
```

EX 2

```
Record 1
001 82-6290
100 ##$aYYYYMMDDaengy010302##ba0
200 #1$7ba0yba0a$8engrus$aGlinka,$bMihail Ivanovič
<Notes and tracings for a Latin script catalogue>
700 #1$382-3498$7ca0yca0y$8rusrus$aГлинка,$bМихаил Иванович
```

```
Record 2
001 82-3498
100 ##$aYYYYMMDDarusy010203##ca0
200 #1$7ca0yca0y$8rusrus$a Глинка,$bМихаил Иванович
<Notes and tracings for a Cyrillic script catalogue>
700 #1$382-6290$7ba0yba0a$8engrus$aGlinka,$bMihail Ivanovič
```

Different Rule Data

A general principle for the establishment of access points in an authority record is that their form is controlled by one set of cataloguing rules, whether descriptive or subject, identified in 152 Rule field. However, a catalogue can contain, for various reasons, access points or authority records as such that are established according to different set of rules. In the case when these access points or the authority record refer to the same entity, a relationship should be established.

Some agencies may need to record different rule data as access points co-resident in an authority record, or may need to record them in separate linked record supported by the full authority record structure (e.g., preferred, variant etc. access points, notes, source information). When

the different rule data are co-resident in an authority record, then the different rule form(s) of the 2-- access point are recorded in repeatable 4-- variant access point field(s), with the code "n" in the \$5 Relationship control subfield indicating the specific type of relationship. When the different rule data are recorded in a separate authority record, then the different rule forms of the 2-- access points are recorded in 5-- related access point fields, with the \$5 Relationship control subfield indicating the specific type of relationship.

Examples:

EX 1

```
152 ##$aPPIAK
200 #1$aMirković$bMijo
400 #1$e$aBalota$bMate
500 #1$2uni-PPIAK$5n$5f$aMirković$bMijo
500 #1$2uni-PPIAK$5n$5e$aBalota$bMate
```

The real name Mijo Mirković and the pseudonym Mate Balota are treated as related access points according to the use of PPIAK (Croatian) cataloguing rules in the online catalogue with UNIMARC format for authority records implementation. The pseudonym Mate Balota is treated as a variant access point according to PPIAK.

EX 2

```
152 ##$apsbo
210 01$aГермания$bВерховное главнокомандование вооруженными
    силами$bУправление разведки и контрразведки
510 02$2nlr_sh$aАбвер
```

Descriptive cataloguing and subject system use different forms of corporate name. 5-- block is used to establish relationship between these forms.

Composite Access Points

In UNIMARC/Authorities, access points or *parts* of access points are designated by field tag as one of several types: personal name, corporate or meeting name, territorial or geographic name, trademark, printer/publisher device, family name, title for the work, name/title, collective title, name/collective title, topical subject, place access, form, genre or physical characteristics.

If the access point is composed of a name *and* title, a special name/title field is defined. Two techniques may be used: the embedded field technique and standard subfields technique. These techniques are described under the 240 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE field description. For a fuller description of these techniques see the *UNIMARC Manual: Bibliographic Format*, as the basic techniques are the same as those used in the UNIMARC 4-- Linking Entry block.

If the access point is composed of a territorial name followed by a corporate or meeting name, the access point is considered a corporate or meeting name.

If the access point is composed of a name, title, trademark, etc., or topical followed by subject subdivisions, the subject subdivisions are carried in \$j, \$x, \$y, and \$z subfields of the name, title, or topical subject that they follow. In name/title entries, the subject subdivisions reside in the embedded title field.

(9) Outline of Content of Records

Content Record

Areas as Specified in GARR

Present in *all* types of records:

0-- Identification Block

ISADN area (where applicable)

1-- Coded Information Block

8-- Source Information Block

Cataloguer's note area, Source area

Authority record:

(Type of record = x)

2-- Authorized Access Point Block

(authorized access point)

3-- Notes Block

4-- Variant Access Point Block

5-- Related Access Point Block

7-- Authorized Access Point in Other
Language and/or Script Block

Authority heading area

Information note area

See reference tracing area

See also reference tracing area

Authority heading area

Reference record:

(Type of record = y)

2-- Authorized Access Point Block

(variant access point)

300 Information Note

310 Textual See Reference Note

7-- Authorized Access Point in Other
Language and/or Script Block

Reference heading area

Information note area

Uniform heading area

Reference heading area

General explanatory entry record:

(Type of record = z)

2-- Authorized Access Point Block

(explanatory access point)

320 General Explanatory Reference Note

7-- Authorized Access Point in
Other Language and/or Script Block

Explanatory heading area

Information note area

Explanatory heading area

(10) Correspondence Between UNIMARC/Authorities and UNIMARC/Bibliographic

UNIMARC/Authorities Access Point Fields	Access point Usage in UNIMARC Bibliographic Fields
200 Personal name	700, 701, 702 4-- with embedded 700, 701, 702 600 604 with embedded 700, 701, 702
210 Corporate or meeting name	710, 711, 712 4-- with embedded 710, 711, 712 601 604 with embedded 710, 711, 712
215 Territorial or geographic name	710, 711, 712 4-- with embedded 710, 711, 712 601, 607 604 with embedded 710, 711, 712
216 Trademark	716
217 Printer/Publisher device	717 [to be defined]
220 Family name	720, 721, 722 4-- with embedded 720, 721, 722 602 604 with embedded 720, 721, 722
230 Title	500 4-- with embedded 500 605
240 Name/title (embedded 200, 210, 215, or 220 and 230)	4-- with embedded 7-- and 500 7-- 604 with embedded 7-- and 500 500
243 Conventional name/title for legal and religious texts	740, 741, 742 4-- with embedded 740
245 Name/collective title (embedded 200, 210, 215, or 220 and 235)	4-- with embedded 7-- and 501 604 with embedded 7-- and 501 7-- 501
250 Topical subject	606, 615
260 Place and date of publication, performance, provenance, etc.	617, 620, 621
280 Form, genre, or physical characteristics	608

(11) Display of Reference and Authority Records

The following methods may be used in coding data to allow flexibility in displaying reference and authority records in order to accommodate the variations in display allowed in the GARR.

- (a) Tracings are divided into 4-- fields for variant access points and 5-- fields for related access points. The first character of these tags thus signals the need for the > and >> symbols, respectively, for use in displays of reference records. For authority records, the 4-- and 5-- signal that the symbols < and << should be displayed or *see* and *see also* as appropriate.
- (b) The relationship code in the relationship control subfield \$5 may be used in a field to indicate in coded form one of several standard relationships the tracing may have with the 2-- record access point. These codes allow systems to display specific relationship information in reference and authority records. Since the textual reference information generated as a result of the code is system dependent, the specific relationship or instruction may be in the language choice of the recipient. This relationship or instruction information is displayed in addition to, not in lieu of, the symbols >, >>, <, and <<.
- (c) If the particular relationship between the 2-- record access point and a tracing is not one of those for which a code value is defined in the relationship code of the \$5 subfield, but is still a one-to-one relationship, subfield \$0, instruction phrase, is provided to supply the instruction in textual form. Since this instruction phrase is in textual form, agencies that cannot use the information in the language given can omit it in displaying authority and reference records since the less precise >, >>, <, and << symbols will also be generated from the field tag. If the \$0 subfield occurs in addition to the relationship code in the \$5 subfield, the instruction in the \$0 should be preferred for display unless it is undesirable for language or other reasons.
- (d) If a relationship between the reference and the referred to access point is several-to-one or has other complexities that make it desirable to transmit the reference as an information note (in addition to tracings), then the 3-- information notes may be used. Variant access points referred from and preferred access points referred to in information notes should also appear as tracings in appropriate authority records. This will allow an agency that cannot use the information note to still display (less precise) reference information from the tracings based on the 4-- and 5-- fields.

EXPLANATORY NOTES

Throughout the text of this Manual, the following conventions have been used.

- (1) The dollar sign (\$) has been used in place of the ISO character IS2 (of ISO 646) as the first character of a subfield identifier.
- (2) The character # has been used in the examples to indicate a blank.
- (3) In the examples the field separator character is assumed and is not shown explicitly.
- (4) The phrase “not defined” associated with an indicator position means that no values have been given to that indicator position.
- (5) Externally maintained code lists are needed in some subfields. These code lists are contained in the following Appendixes of the *UNIMARC Manual: Bibliographic Format*:

Appendix A: Language Codes (based on ISO 639-2)

Appendix B: Country Codes (based on ISO 3166-1)

Appendix C: Relator Codes

Appendix D: Geographic Area Code

Appendix G: Subject Systems Codes

Appendix H: Cataloguing Rules and Format Codes

Appendix J: Character Sets (based on ISO 2022)

FIELD LIST

All fields defined for this format are listed below:

0-- IDENTIFICATION BLOCK

- 001 Record Identifier
- 003 Persistent Record Identifier
- 005 Version Identifier
- 015 International Standard Authority Data Number (Obsolete)
- 035 Other System Control Numbers
- 036 Music Incipit
- 050 International Standard Text Code (ISTC)
- 051 International Standard Musical Work Code (ISWC)
- 052 International Standard Audiovisual Number (ISAN)
- 061 International Standard Recording Code (ISRC)

1-- CODED INFORMATION BLOCK

- 100 General Processing Data
- 101 Language of the Entity
- 102 Nationality of the Entity
- 106 Coded Data Field: Personal/Corporate/Family Name/Trademark/Printer/Publisher Device Used as Subject Access Point
- 120 Coded Data Field: Personal Name
- 123 Coded Data Field: Territorial or Geographical Name
- 150 Coded Data Field: Corporate Name
- 152 Rules
- 154 Coded Data Field: Title
- 160 Geographic Area Code

2-- AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT BLOCK

- 200 Authorized Access Point – Personal Name
- 210 Authorized Access Point – Corporate Body Name
- 215 Authorized Access Point – Territorial or Geographical Name
- 216 Authorized Access Point – Trademark
- 217 Authorized Access Point – Printer/Publisher Device
- 220 Authorized Access Point – Family Name
- 230 Authorized Access Point – Title
- 235 Authorized Access Point – Collective Title
- 240 Authorized Access Point – Name/Title
- 243 Authorized Access Point – Conventional Name/Title for Legal and Religious Texts
- 245 Authorized Access Point – Name/Collective Title
- 250 Authorized Access Point – Topical Subject
- 260 Authorized Access Point – Place and Date of Publication, Performance, Provenance, etc.
- 280 Authorized Access Point – Form, Genre or Physical Characteristics

3-- NOTES BLOCK

- 300 Information Note
- 305 Textual See Also Reference Note
- 310 Textual See Reference Note
- 320 General Explanatory Reference Note
- 330 General Scope Note
- 340 Biography and Activity Note
- 341 Activity Note Pertaining to Printer/Publisher
- 356 Geographical Note

4-- VARIANT ACCESS POINT BLOCK

- 400 Variant Access Point – Personal Name
- 410 Variant Access Point – Corporate Body Name
- 415 Variant Access Point – Territorial or Geographical Name
- 416 Variant Access Point – Trademark
- 417 Variant Access Point – Printer/Publisher Device
- 420 Variant Access Point – Family Name
- 430 Variant Access Point – Title
- 440 Variant Access Point – Name/Title
- 443 Variant Access Point – Conventional Name/Title for Legal and Religious Texts
- 445 Variant Access Point – Name/Collective Title
- 450 Variant Access Point – Topical Subject
- 460 Variant Access Point – Place and Date of Publication, Performance, Provenance, etc.
- 480 Variant Access Point – Form, Genre or Physical Characteristics

5-- RELATED ACCESS POINT BLOCK

- 500 Related Access Point – Personal Name
- 510 Related Access Point – Corporate Body Name
- 515 Related Access Point – Territorial or Geographical Name
- 516 Related Access Point – Trademark
- 517 Related Access Point – Printer/Publisher Device
- 520 Related Access Point – Family Name
- 530 Related Access Point – Title
- 540 Related Access Point – Name/Title
- 543 Related Access Point – Conventional Name/Title for Legal and Religious Texts
- 545 Related Access Point – Name/Collective Title
- 550 Related Access Point – Topical Subject
- 560 Related Access Point – Place and Date of Publication, Performance, Provenance, etc.
- 580 Related Access Point – Form, Genre or Physical Characteristics

6-- CLASSIFICATION AND ENTITY HISTORY BLOCK

- 640 Place(s) and Date(s) Associated with the Entity
- 675 Universal Decimal Classification (UDC)
- 676 Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC)
- 680 Library of Congress Classification (LCC)
- 686 Other Classification Numbers

7-- AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT BLOCK

- 700 Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script – Personal Name
- 710 Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script – Corporate Body Name
- 715 Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script – Territorial or Geographical Name
- 716 Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script – Trademark
- 717 Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script – Printer/Publisher Device
- 720 Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script – Family Name
- 730 Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script – Title
- 740 Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script – Name/Title
- 743 Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script – Conventional Name/Title for Legal and Religious Texts
- 745 Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script – Name/Collective Title
- 750 Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script – Topical Subject
- 760 Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script – Place and Date of Publication, Performance, Provenance, etc.
- 780 Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script – Form, Genre or Physical Characteristics

8-- SOURCE INFORMATION BLOCK

- 801 Originating Source
- 810 Source Data Found
- 815 Source Data Not Found
- 820 Usage or Scope Information
- 825 Example Under Note
- 830 General Cataloguer's Note
- 835 Deleted Access Point Information
- 836 Replaced Access Point Information
- 856 Electronic Location and Access
- 886 Data not Converted from Source Format

9-- NATIONAL USE BLOCK

FORMAT

RECORD LABEL

Field Definition

The Record Label is constructed according to the provisions of ISO-2709.

Occurrence

The record label occurs at the beginning of every record. Mandatory. Not repeatable.

Tags, Indicators and Subfields

The record label has no tags, indicators or subfield identifiers.

Fixed Length Data Elements

These data elements are identified by character position within the label. The label as a whole is always 24 characters in length. Conventionally the character positions are numbered 0-23.

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Position
Record Length	5	0-4
Record Status	1	5
Implementation Codes	4	6-9
Indicator Length	1	10
Subfield Identifier Length	1	11
Base Address of Data	5	12-16
Additional Record Definition	3	17-19
Directory Map	4	20-23

Notes on Field Contents

The Record Label (also known as leader) is found at the beginning of each UNIMARC record and contains data for processing the record. Character positions 10, 11, 20-23 contain specific fixed values at this time and may be generated programmatically by the computer. Character positions 0-4 and 12-16 contain numerical data indicating the number of characters in certain areas of the record; these can be calculated by the computer when the record is formatted. Values for the character positions 5, 6-9, 17-19 may be translated from data in the source record by conversion program or, where UNIMARC is being used as the source format, assigned manually.

0-4 Record Length

Five decimal digits, right justified, with zero fill where necessary, representing the number of characters in the entire record, including the label itself, the directory, and the variable fields. This data element is normally calculated automatically when the total record is assembled for exchange.

5 Record Status

A single digit denoting the processing status of the record.

c = corrected or revised record

A record to which changes have been made to correct errors, one which has been amended to bring it up to date, or one where fields have been deleted

d = deleted record

A record which is exchanged in order to indicate that a record bearing this record identifier is no longer valid. The record may contain only the label, directory, and 001 (record identifier) field, or it may contain all the fields in the record as issued; in either case 835 DELETED ACCESS POINT INFORMATION field may be used to explain why the record is deleted.

n = new record

A new record.

6-9 Implementation Codes

6 Type of Record

x = authority entry record

Code x indicates that the content of the record constitutes an authority record in which the 2-- preferred access point is established and is authorized for use as the lead element in constructing certain access points of a bibliographic record.

y = reference entry record

Code y indicates that the content of the record constitutes a reference record in which the 2-- authorized access point is unestablished and is not authorized for use as the lead element in an access point in a bibliographic record. The 2-- is traced in the 4-- in an authority record.

z = general explanatory entry record

Code z indicates that the content of the record constitutes a general explanatory entry record in which the 2-- authorized access point is unestablished and is not traced in the 4-- in any authority record.

7-8 Undefined

Contains two blanks.

9 Type of entity

The code indicates the type of entity identified in the 2--.

a = personal name entry

b = corporate name entry

c = territorial or geographical name

d = trademark

e = family name

f = preferred title

g = collective preferred title

h = name/title
i = name/collective preferred title
j = topical subject
k = place access
l = form, genre or physical characteristics

10 Indicator Length

One numeric digit giving the length of the indicators. This is invariably 2 in UNIMARC.

11 Subfield Identifier Length

One numeric digit giving the length of the subfield identifier; e.g., '\$a'. This is invariably 2 in UNIMARC.

12-16 Base Address of Data

Five numeric digits, right justified with leading zeros, indicating the starting character position of the first data field relative to the beginning of the record. Since the first character of the record is numbered 0 (zero), the number entered as the base address of data will be equal to the total number of characters in the label and directory including the field separator that terminates the directory. In the directory, the starting character position for each field is given relative to the first character of the first data field which will be field 001, rather than the beginning of the record. The base address thus gives the base from which the position of each field is calculated. This number will generally be supplied automatically by the computer when the UNIMARC record is finally assembled.

17-19 Additional Record Definition

17 Encoding Level

A one-character code indicates the degree of completeness of the machine record. The following codes have been defined, and others may be added at a later date.

= full

The record contains necessary data including applicable tracings.

3 = partial

The record does not contain complete data because appropriate reference work had not yet been carried out.

18-19 Undefined

Two blanks.

20-23 Directory Map

This provides details of the length and structure of the directory entry for each of the UNIMARC fields. The four positions are as follows:

20 Length of "length of field" part of each directory entry

One decimal digit giving the number of characters in the “length of field” part of each directory entry. The value in UNIMARC is 4. This allows a maximum field length of 9,999 characters.

21 Length of "starting character position" part of each directory entry

One decimal digit giving the number of characters in the “starting character position” of each directory entry. The value in UNIMARC is 5. This allows a maximum record length of approximately 100,000 characters.

22-23 Undefined

Two blanks.

Related Fields

The data elements found in the record label are not found elsewhere in UNIMARC. Although some of the values of the implementation codes “type of record” and “type of entity” appear to overlap with other coded data, in fact the codes in the record label refer to attributes of the record and not directly to attributes of the entity itself.

Directory entry 2 Other directory entries

0-- IDENTIFICATION BLOCK

Definition and Scope of Fields

This block contains numbers that identify the record and the record version, as well as entities for which the record has been created.

The following fields are defined:

- 001 Record Identifier
- 003 Persistent Record Identifier
- 005 Version Identifier
- 015 International Standard Authority Data Number (Obsolete)
- 035 Other System Control Numbers
- 036 Music Incipit
- 050 International Standard Text Code (ISTC)
- 051 International Standard Musical Work Code (ISWC)
- 052 International Standard Audiovisual Number (ISAN)
- 061 International Standard Recording Code (ISRC)

Occurrence

Field 001 is mandatory in every record. Other fields are entered when data is available.

001 RECORD IDENTIFIER

Field Definition

This field contains the record control number assigned by the organization creating, using, or distributing the record.

Occurrence

Mandatory. Not repeatable.

Indicators

In conformance with ISO 2709 this field does not have indicators.

Subfields

In conformance with ISO 2709 this field does not contain subfields.

Notes on Field Contents

There are no restrictions on the form of the record identifier.

When the record identifier consists of or incorporates any form of an International Standard Number, other identifiable number such a national number, or other data such as country of publication, this information is nevertheless to be entered in the field specified for that data in addition to recording it as the record identifier in this field.

Related Fields

An agency may be using other separately identified numbers such as ISBN or National Bibliography Number as a Record Identifier. See Notes on Field Contents above for treatment in these cases.

Examples

EX 1

001 78-34279

EX 2

001 n##82-003762#

003 PERSISTENT RECORD IDENTIFIER

Field Definition

This field contains the persistent identifier of the record assigned by the agency which creates, uses or issues the record. This is the persistent identifier for the authority record, not for the described entity itself.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable.

Indicators

In conformance with ISO 2709 this field does not have indicators.

Subfields

In conformance with ISO 2709 this field does not contain subfields.

Notes on Field Contents

Persistent identifiers are specific internet addresses which allow one to reference an electronic resource with the aid of a hypertext link, while making sure that this link will not change. There are several systems which allow the creation of persistent identifiers.

An authority record can also be referenced through a persistent identifier. With the help of this tool, it is possible to add this authority record to one's own bookmarks or to quote it on a Web site, in an e-mail, on a blog or in a forum, simply by using the address which is displayed in the browser during an online session.

Related Fields

001 RECORD IDENTIFIER

The control number assigned by the organization creating, using, or distributing the record; it can form part of the persistent identifier, but not necessarily. The persistent identifier has the same function on the web as the system control number (record identifier) for the record in the database.

856 ELECTRONIC LOCATION AND ACCESS

Location and access of an electronic resource which provides supplementary information about the entity for which the authority record was created.

Examples

EX 1

001 FRBNF11911553

003 <http://catalogue.bnf.fr/ark:/12148/cb119115538/>

The persistent identifier of the authority record for Jean-Marie Gustave Le Clézio in the BnF catalogue.

EX 2

001 oca05594636

003 <http://erol.oclc.org/laf/nb2001-72552.html>

The persistent identifier of the authority record for Gordon Dunsire available from the OCLC LAF; Linked Authority File.

005 VERSION IDENTIFIER

Field Definition

This field consists of 16 characters indicating the date and time of the latest record transaction.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable.

Indicators

In conformance with ISO 2709 this field does not have indicators.

Subfields

In conformance with ISO 2709 this field does not contain subfields.

Notes on Field Contents

The date and time are recorded according to ISO 8601. The date is entered in the form YYYYMMDD where YYYY represents the year, MM the month and DD the day of the month. The time is entered in the form HHMMSS.T where HH represents the hour using the twenty four hour clock, MM the minutes, SS the seconds and .T tenths of a second. In all cases a leading 0 is added if necessary.

Related Fields

100 GENERAL PROCESSING DATA (character positions 0-7)

This is the date of original creation of the record and will not change even if the record is corrected or exchanged.

801 ORIGINATING SOURCE FIELD subfield \$c

This subfield gives solely year, month and day of modification, transcription and/or issue.

Examples

EX 1

005 19850901141236.0

The date of last transaction was 1st September 1985 at 14:12:36 hours (i.e., 2:12:36 p.m.). “1st” is entered as “01” not “1”, “September” as “09” not “9”, to preserve the format.

015 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD AUTHORITY DATA NUMBER (OBSOLETE)

History

UNIMARC Authorities field 015, which had been reserved for the International Standard Authority Data Number, was made obsolete in accordance with IFLA's decision not to pursue the idea of an ISADN as it had been defined. Institutions that have used field 015 for locally assigned ISADNs can convert this field into an appropriate 05- or 061 field.

035 OTHER SYSTEM CONTROL NUMBERS

Field Definition

This field contains the control number of records obtained from other sources.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)

Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a System control number

A code for the organisation in parentheses followed by the system control number for the record in that organisation's database. Since there are no internationally accepted codes, the codes from the *MARC Code List for Organisations* are recommended. Otherwise the full name of the agency or a national code may be used. Not repeatable.

\$z Cancelled or invalid control number

Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The control number is stored in the form contributed.

Related Fields

001 RECORD IDENTIFIER

The control number used as the unique identifier of the record by the agency preparing it.

Examples

EX 1

035 ##\$a(CaBVaU)2835210335

The control number was assigned by the University of British Columbia.

EX 2

035 ##\$a(OCOLC)1553114\$z(OCOLC)153114

The control number was assigned by OCLC. The original number assigned was invalid and has been superseded.

EX 3

001 RU\NLR\AUTH\8810088678

035 ##\$a(Владимирская ОУНБ)NILC/AF/0000000197

The control number of the record in Russian national authority file derived from the record created by Vladimir Universal Research Library.

036 MUSIC INCIPIT

Field Definition

This field contains data describing the musical incipit for music in partially coded form.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)

Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Number of work

A two-digit code indicates the work to which the incipit refers, if a set of compositions (e.g., six sonatas) is entirely described in a single record. If the record describes only one work use "01". Mandatory. Not repeatable. E.g., an incipit describing the second sonata of a set of six: 036 \$a = 02.

\$b Number of movement

A two-digit code indicates the movement within a work to which the incipit refers. If the work has only one movement use "01". Mandatory. Not repeatable. E.g., an incipit describing the third movement of a symphony: 036 \$b = 03.

\$c Number of incipit

A two-digit code distinguishes different incipits referring to the same movement. If there is only one incipit for a movement use "01". Mandatory. Not repeatable. E.g., in an aria needing an incipit for the instrumental introduction and one for the vocal part the two incipits will have respectively 036 \$c = 01 and 036 \$c = 02

\$d Voice/instrument

The voice or instrument coded in 036 \$p. Mandatory if 036 \$p is present. Not repeatable.

\$e Role

The name of the character singing the incipit coded in 036 \$p. Optional. Not repeatable.

\$f Movement caption/heading

Caption or heading of the movement, as it appears on the source. Optional. Repeatable.

\$g Key or mode

The key or mode of the movement, if applicable. Use capital letters A-G to indicate major keys, lowercase a-g to indicate minor keys, "x" for sharps and "b" for flats, numbers 1-12 for gregorian modes. Optional. Not repeatable.

- \$m** Clef
- Three-character code. Use capital “F” or “C” or “G” to indicate the clef shape, then “-” as separator, then number 1-5 to indicate the clef position on the staff, starting from the bottom line. Use “+” as separator to indicate mensural notation. Mandatory if 036 \$p is present, otherwise void. Not repeatable. E.g., to indicate the bass clef 036 \$m = F-4
- \$n** Key signature
- Use “x” to indicate sharps and “b” to indicate flats, followed by capitals F,C,G,D,A,E,B or B,E,A,D,G,C,F respectively to indicate sharpened or flattened notes. Optional. Not repeatable. E.g., an incipit in A major with three sharps: 036 \$n = xFCG
- \$o** Time signature
- The time value or mensuration sign reported on the staff is transcribed with a symbol (c, c/, c., o, etc.) and/or a number (3, 2, c3, etc.) or a fraction (4/4, 12/8, etc.). Optional. Not repeatable.
- \$p** Musical notation
- Use the notation symbols of Plaine & Easie Code or DARMS code to transcribe the first notes of the selected staff. Optional. Not repeatable.
- \$q** Comments (free text)
- Free-text note. Optional. Repeatable.
- \$r** Codified note
- A one-character code indicates a comment note. Use “?” to indicate a mistake in the incipit, not corrected, “+” to indicate a mistake in the incipit, corrected, “t” to indicate that the incipit has been transcribed (e.g., from mensural notation). Optional. Not repeatable.
- \$t** Text incipit
- The literary text (if present) as it appears on the source. If the source has multiple texts each one is transcribed in a separate occurrence of 036 \$t. Optional. Repeatable.
- \$u** Uniform Resource Identifier
- The Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), for example, a URL or URN, which provides electronic access data to an incipit in digital format, e.g., graphic (jpeg, gif, tiff etc.) or notational (enigma, niff, etc.). This data can be used for automated access to an electronic item using one of the Internet protocols. Subfield \$u may be repeated only if one location of the digital object has multiple identifiers (URIs). The field is repeated if the digital object has multiple locations. Optional. Repeatable.
- \$z** Language of text
- Coded identification of the language of the incipit. Use if text is different or may be misinterpreted from 101 LANGUAGE OF THE ENTITY. When the subfield is repeated, the order of language codes should reflect the extent and significance of the languages within the work. If this is not possible, enter the language codes in alphabetical order. Code “mul” may be entered when a large number of languages applies in the subfield. See Appendix A for list of codes. Optional. Repeatable.

\$2 System code

The \$2 subfield identifies a code that specifies the system used to code the musical notation. A two character code indicates the code used to transcribe in 036 \$p. Mandatory if 036 \$p is present. Not repeatable.

Codes:

pe = plaine & easie code

Available online at http://www.iaml.info/en/cataloguing/plain_and_easy_code

da = DARMS code

Beyond MIDI : The Handbook of Musical Codes / edited by Eleanor Selfridge-Field. – Cambridge, Mass. [etc.], MIT Press, 1997. –xviii, 630 p. : mus. ; 24 cm. ISBN 0-262-19394-9. Also available online at <http://www.ccarh.org/publications/books/beyondmidi/online/darms/>

Note: graphic images are not available.

Examples**EX 1**

036 ##\$2pe\$a01\$b01\$c01\$dS\$fAria\$ge\$mC-1\$oc\$p'2B4B8BB/4G8GxF4FF/4xA8AA4.A
t8B/4B\$tRei d'impuniti eccessi

The system code for musical notation in 036 subfield \$p is plaine & easie. Coding of the following incipit:

1.1: Aria, S. Rei d'impuniti eccessi

**EX 2**

036 ##\$2pe\$a01\$b01\$c01\$dv11\$fScena. Largo\$mG-2\$nbBEA\$oc
\$p8{'C'+8(3{CDEFG};5)}8{GC}{,nB'G}4(-)"/2G+6{GnB"C"E}6{DCAG}
036 ##\$2pe\$a01\$b01\$c02\$dS\$eSara\$fScena. Largo\$mC-1\$nbBEA\$oc
\$p=5/4-"6C3CC6DEgF6CC8-6ED/q8D4C8C'nB"4D-/2-/StChi per pietà mi dice il fig
lio mio che fa
036 ##\$2pe\$a01\$b02\$c01\$dv11\$fAria. Allegro\$mG-2\$nbBEA\$oc
\$p6{'EDEF}{GABG}{EDEF}{GABG}/{'C'BAG}{FEDC},4B-/
036 ##\$2pe\$a01\$b02\$c02\$dS\$eSara\$fAria. Allegro\$mC-1\$nbBEA\$oc
\$p2-/2-"4.F8D/gC'8BB4-2(-)/=2"/2E'G/"4.C'8A4F-/Fq8B4A8GF/
StDeh parlate che forse tacendo

Coding of the scena, and aria of *Deh parlate che forse tacendo* by D. Cimarosa.

EX 3

036 ##\$2pe\$a01\$b01\$c01\$d1st violin\$fAndante\$mG-2\$nxFC\$so4/4
\$p4-8'A/{6"DA}gG{6F3ED}{6EB}gA{6G3FE}8F4D8C/{6DA}
036 ##\$a01\$b02\$c01\$fAllegro\$gD\$so4/4
036 ##\$a01\$b03\$c01\$fAllegretto\$gD\$so3/4

Coding of C. A. Campion's trio for 2 violins and bass in D major in three movements.

EX 4

036 ##\$2da\$a01\$b01\$c01\$dOb. 1\$mG-2\$nbB\$oc\$p RE 9S((8)) 9((8 9 8)) 9E(6) 7(6S(5)) /
4S((3 2 3)) /\$uhttp://www.classicalarchives.com/cgi-bin/n.cgi/prep/6/jsbbrc11.mid

DARMS coding and URL of MIDI source of J.S.Bach's Brandenburg Concerto nr.1 BWV 1046, 1st oboe part:



K Oboe 1 \$
!I1 !G !K1- !MC,12@Ob. 1\$ RE 9S((8)) 9((8 9 8)) 9E(6) 7(6S(5)) / 4S((3 2 3)) /

050 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD TEXT CODE (ISTC)

Field Definition

This field contains an International Standard Text Code. The ISTC identifies textual works and not physical products.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)
Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Number (ISTC)

A correctly applied ISTC including hyphens. The ISTCs are assigned by registration agencies appointed by the ISTC registration authority. Not repeatable. Mandatory unless \$z is present.

\$z Erroneous ISTC

An ISTC that has been identified as being erroneously applied to a textual work or is otherwise invalid. It may have been allocated to two different textual works and in this instance cancelled, or it may have been incorrectly printed. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

ISTC Structure:

The ISTC is used to identify a textual work or any derivation of a textual work, according to the provisions of ISO 21047. An ISTC consists of sixteen digits. Whenever it is printed or written, the number is preceded by the letters ISTC. In countries where the Latin alphabet is not used, an abbreviation in the local script may be used in addition to the Latin letters ISTC.

The ISTC is divided into four elements, each of which is separated by a hyphen or a space:

Registration agency: Three hexadecimal digits that designate the registration agency which has given the ISTC. The registration agency element is assigned by the ISTC registration authority.

Year: The four digits of the year in which the ISTC was allocated to the textual work.

(Textual) work: This consists of eight hexadecimal digits, assigned by the registration agency.

Check digit: The fourth element of the ISTC is the check digit. This is calculated using a MOD 16-3 algorithm, according to the standard ISO 7064.

Data Format:

The letters ISTC, which are mandatory when the ISTC is written or printed, should not be entered in field 050. Any ISTC which is found to appear printed on an item or elsewhere can be entered in subfield \$z, Erroneous ISTC, which is provided to give access to records that may have been requested by an erroneous number. Hyphens or blanks are inserted to separate the four parts of the number in the \$a or \$z subfield. No other punctuation is permitted. The purpose of the hyphens or blanks in the ISTC is to separate the distinct parts. When an ISTC is displayed in a catalogue entry the inclusion of the hyphens or blanks is mandatory.

Examples

EX 1

050 ##\$a0A9-2002-12B4A105-7

051 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD MUSICAL WORK CODE (ISWC)

Field Definition

This field contains an International Standard Musical Work Code. The ISWC identifies musical works and not physical products.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)

Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Number (ISWC)

A correctly applied ISWC including hyphens. The ISWCs are assigned by the ISWC international agency. Not repeatable. Mandatory unless \$z is present.

\$z Erroneous ISWC

An ISWC that has been identified as being erroneously applied to a musical work or is otherwise invalid. It may have been allocated to two different musical works and in this instance cancelled, or it may have been incorrectly printed. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

ISWC Structure:

The ISWC is used to identify a musical work or any derivation of a musical work, according to the provisions of ISO 15707. An ISWC consists of eleven digits. Whenever it is printed or written, the number is preceded by the letters ISWC. In countries where the Latin alphabet is not used, an abbreviation in the local script may be used in addition to the Latin letters ISWC.

The ISWC is divided into three elements, each of which is separated by a hyphen:

Prefix: The letter “T”.

(Musical) work identifier: This consists of nine numerical digits.

Check digit: The third element of the ISWC is the check digit. This is calculated using a MOD 10 algorithm.

Data Format:

The letters ISWC, which are usually found printed with the ISWC on items, should not be entered in field 051. They are mandatory when the ISWC is written or printed, including when the ISWC is displayed in an authority record. Any ISWC which is found to appear wrongly on an item or elsewhere can be entered in subfield \$z, Erroneous ISWC, which is provided to give access to records that may have been requested by an erroneous number. Hyphens are inserted

to separate the three parts of the number in the \$a or \$z subfield. The purpose of the hyphens in the ISWC is to separate the distinct parts. When an ISTC is displayed in an authority record the inclusion of the hyphens is mandatory. Dots can be used in the identifier in order to facilitate the reading. No other punctuation is permitted.

Related Fields

061 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD RECORDING CODE (ISRC)

Examples

EX 1

051 ##\$aT-345346800-1

The code ISWC T-345346800-1.

052 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD AUDIOVISUAL NUMBER (ISAN)

Field Definition

This field contains an International Standard Audiovisual Number. The ISAN identifies audiovisual works and not physical products.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)

Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Number (ISAN)

A correctly applied ISAN including hyphens or blanks. The ISANs are assigned by the ISAN international agency. Not repeatable. Mandatory unless \$z is present.

\$z Erroneous ISAN

An ISAN that has been identified as being erroneously applied to an audiovisual work or is otherwise invalid. It may have been allocated to two different audiovisual works (or parts of an audiovisual work) and in this instance cancelled, or it may have been incorrectly printed. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

ISAN Structure:

The ISAN is used to identify an audiovisual work, according to the provisions of ISO 15706. An ISAN consists of sixteen hexadecimal digits. Whenever it is printed or written, the number is preceded by the letters ISAN and followed by a check digit. In countries where the Latin alphabet is not used, an abbreviation in the local script may be used in addition to the Latin letters ISAN.

The ISAN is divided into three elements, each of which is separated by a hyphen or a blank:

Core element: This consists of twelve hexadecimal digits.

Part identifier: This consists of four hexadecimal digits.

Check digit: The third element of the ISAN is the check digit. It is mandatory when the ISAN is written or printed. This is calculated using the MOD 37, 39 algorithm defined in the standard ISO 7064.

Data Format:

The letters ISAN, which are usually found printed with the ISAN on items, should not be entered in field 052. They are mandatory when the ISAN is written or printed, including when the

ISAN is displayed in an authority record. Any ISAN which is found to appear wrongly on an item or elsewhere can be entered in subfield \$z, Erroneous ISAN, which is provided to give access to records that may have been requested by an erroneous number. Hyphens or blank are inserted in the \$a or \$z subfield to transcribe the ISAN as four groups of four hexadecimal digits. An hyphen or a blank is also used to separate the check digit from the two preceding elements. The purpose of the hyphens or blanks in the ISAN is to facilitate the reading of the number. When an ISAN is displayed in an authority record the inclusion of the hyphens or blanks is mandatory. No other punctuation is permitted.

Examples

EX 1

052 ##\$a0000-3BAB-9352-0000-G-0000-0000-Q

An imaginary ISAN.

061 INTERNATIONAL STANDARD RECORDING CODE (ISRC)

Field Definition

This field contains an International Standard Recording Code. The ISRC identifies sound recordings and music video recordings and not physical products.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)

Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Number (ISRC)

A correctly applied ISRC including hyphens. The ISRCs are assigned by the designated agency in each country. Not repeatable. Mandatory unless \$z is present.

\$z Erroneous ISRC

An ISRC that has been identified as being erroneously applied to a recording or is otherwise invalid. It may have been allocated to two different recordings and in this instance cancelled, or it may have been incorrectly printed. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

ISRC Structure:

The ISRC is used to identify an audio, video or audio-visual recording, according to the provisions of ISO 3901.

An ISRC consists of twelve digits. Whenever it is printed or written, the number is preceded by the letters ISRC. In countries where the Latin alphabet is not used, an abbreviation in the local script may be used in addition to the Latin letters ISRC.

The ISRC is now divided into four elements, each of which is separated by a hyphen. The former fourth and fifth elements are now one element without hyphen:

Country code: A two-letter country code assigned from ISO 3166-1.

Registrant code: An alphanumeric 3 character code assigned by nominated agencies.

Year of reference: The last two digits of the year in which the ISRC was allocated to the recording.

Designation code: This consists of five digits, assigned by the registrant.

Data Format:

The letters ISRC, which are usually found printed with the ISRC on items, should not be entered in field 061. They are mandatory when the ISRC is written or printed, including when the ISRC is displayed in an authority record. Any ISRC which is found to appear wrongly on an

item or elsewhere can be entered in subfield \$z, Erroneous ISRC, which is provided to give access to records that may have been requested by an erroneous number. Hyphens are inserted to separate the four parts of the number in the \$a or \$z subfield. No other punctuation is permitted. The purpose of the hyphens in the ISRC is to separate the distinct parts. When an ISRC is displayed in an authority record the inclusion of the hyphens is mandatory. Many national agencies do not store the hyphens in the machine-readable record since they can be generated by algorithm.

Examples

EX 1

061 ##\$aFR-Z03-98-00212

Mercury France registered a recording made in 1998, ISRC FR-Z03-98-00212.

1-- CODED INFORMATION BLOCK

Definition and Scope of Fields

This block contains coded fixed length data fields. The following fields are defined:

- 100 General Processing Data
- 101 Language of the Entity
- 102 Nationality of the Entity
- 106 Coded Data Field: Personal/Corporate/Family Name/Trademark/Printer/Publisher Device
Used as Subject Access Point
- 120 Coded Data Field: Personal Name
- 123 Coded Data Field: Territorial or Geographical Name
- 150 Coded Data Field: Corporate Name
- 152 Rules
- 154 Coded Data Field: Title
- 160 Geographic Area Code

Occurrence

Field 100 is mandatory in every record. Other fields are entered as required by the type of access point in the 2-- block.

Notes on Field Contents

Data in these fields is generally defined in terms of the position of a character in a subfield, counting the first character following the subfield identifier as 0. If a bibliographic agency does not supply any coded information in a given field, the field will be omitted unless mandatory. If some data in a field is supplied but not all, the omitted data element positions will contain fill characters.

The control subfields are defined at the end of the 1-- block, but may not be used in conjunction with fields in the 1--.

100 GENERAL PROCESSING DATA

Field Definition

This field contains basic coded data applicable to all types of authority records.

Occurrence

Mandatory. Field is not repeatable. Certain data elements, marked "(mandatory)", are not permitted to be occupied by the fill character.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)
Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a General processing data

Mandatory. Not repeatable.

List of fixed length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Position
Date entered on file (Mandatory)	8	0-7
Status of authorized access point code	1	8
Language of cataloguing (Mandatory)	3	9-11
Transliteration code	1	12
Character set (Mandatory)	4	13-16
Additional character set	4	17-20
Script of cataloguing	2	21-22
Direction of script of cataloguing	1	23

Notes on Field Contents

0-7 Date Entered on File (Mandatory)

Eight numeric characters in ISO standard form (ISO 8601) for dates: YYYYMMDD where YYYY represents the year, MM the month with leading 0 if necessary and DD the day of the month with leading 0 if necessary.

The date will usually be the date when the machine-readable record was created, to give some idea of the age of the record. A record corrected because of errors in keying or editing will not have a change of date. On exchange, the record should also retain its original date.

Example:

5 October 1967: 19671005

8 Status of Authorized Access Point Code

A one-character alphabetic code is used to indicate the level of establishment of an access point in an authority record.

Note: This data element should not be confused with record label byte 17 (encoding level) which relates to the fullness of the entire record.

a = established

The access point is established.

c = provisional

The access point cannot be established definitively due to inadequate information; when the access point is next used, it should be reconsidered in the light of any additional information.

x = not applicable

The record is a reference entry record or a general explanatory entry record and, therefore, the 2-- record access point field contains a variant access point.

9-11 Language of Cataloguing (Mandatory)

A three-character code indicates the language used in cataloguing. The 2-- authorized access point appears as it would in a catalogue based on the language specified here. Also any qualifiers, notes or other instructional information will be in the language of cataloguing. The language codes are listed in ISO 639-2, and in Appendix A of the *UNIMARC Manual: Bibliographic Format*.

The access point itself may be in a language different from the language of cataloguing. For example, under some cataloguing rules a preferred title for a French anonymous work would be established in its French form no matter what the language of cataloguing is.

12 Transliteration Code

A one-character code indicates the transliteration system used for the first 2-- base access point in the record.

a = ISO transliteration scheme

b = other

c = multiple transliterations: ISO or other schemes. Code “c” will usually be used when multiple scripts are recorded in \$7 access point fields.

d = transliteration table established by the National Bibliographic Agency

e = transliteration without any identified transliteration table

f = other identified transliteration scheme(s)

y = no transliteration scheme used

13-16 Character Set (Mandatory)

These four character positions indicate the principal graphic character sets used in the record. Positions 13-14 designate the G0 set and positions 15-16 designate the G1 set. If a G1 set is not needed, positions 15-16 contain blanks.

01 = ISO 646, IRV version (basic Latin set)

02 = ISO Registration #37 (basic Cyrillic set) (Obsolete)

03 = ISO 5426 (extended Latin set)

04 = ISO 5427 (extended Cyrillic set)

05 = ISO 5428 (Greek set)
06 = ISO 6438 (African coded character set)
07 = ISO 10586 (Georgian character set)
08 = ISO 8957 (Hebrew set) Table 1
09 = ISO 8957 (Hebrew set) Table 2
10 = [Reserved]
11 = ISO 5426-2 (Latin characters used in minor European languages and obsolete typography)
50 = ISO 10646 Level 3

Note that ISO 10646, being a 16-bit character set, contains all necessary characters. When positions 13-14 contain “50” this will be used for the C0, C1 and G0 sets. Positions 15-20 will contain blanks.

Examples:

Transmission in an 8-bit code with G0 set of ISO 646 and G1 set of ISO extended Latin:
0103

Transmission in an 8-bit code made up of basic Cyrillic: 0102

Transmission in a 7-bit code using ISO 646 only: 01##

17-20 Additional Character Set

Two two-character codes indicate up to two additional graphic character sets used in communication of the record. The codes are the same as those used in character positions 13-16. Positions 17-18 designate the G2 set and positions 19-20 designate the G3 set. If no additional character sets are needed, the bytes contain blanks. The *UNIMARC Manual: Bibliographic Format*, Appendix J, describes the action required when more than four sets must be accessed. If no additional sets are involved, the four positions contain blanks.

Example:

Transmission in an 8-bit code made up of basic Cyrillic and extended Cyrillic:
010204##

21-22 Script of Cataloguing

A two-character code indicates the script used in cataloguing. In authority records, the 2-- qualifiers, notes and other instructional information appear in this script

ba = Latin	ha = Hebrew
ca = Cyrillic	ia = Thai
da = Japanese – script unspecified	ja = Devanagari
db = Japanese – kanji	ka = Korean
dc = Japanese – kana	la = Tamil
ea = Chinese	ma = Georgian
fa = Arabic	mb = Armenian
ga = Greek	zz = Other

23 Direction of Script of Cataloguing

A single-character code indicates the direction of the script used in cataloguing, as coded in character positions 100/21-22:

0 = left to right
1 = right to left

Examples

EX 1

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0

The language is French. No transliteration has been used. The character sets are ISO 646, basic Latin set (pos. 13-14) and ISO 5426, extended Latin set (pos. 15-16). The script is Latin, the direction of the script is from left to right.

EX 2

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDapery50#####fa1

The language is Persian (Farsi). No transliteration has been used. The character set is ISO 10646 Level 3. The script is Arabic, the direction of the script is from right to left.

101 LANGUAGE OF THE ENTITY

Field Definition

This field contains coded information relating to the language or languages used by the entity identified by 2--. The entity may be an author (i.e., a person, a family, a corporate body) or a work.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)

Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Language of or language used by the entity

This subfield contains the language in which the author expresses him/herself or the original language of a work. Mandatory. Repeatable.

\$c Language of the expression

This subfield contains the language of the expression of a work. Optional. Repeatable (EX 7).

Notes on Field Contents

Each subfield contains a three-character language code. The language codes are listed in ISO 639-2 standard and in Appendix A of *UNIMARC Manual: Bibliographic Format*.

Related fields

340 BIOGRAPHY AND ACTIVITY NOTE

Examples

EX 1

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0

101 ##\$aeng

152 ##\$aAFNOR

200 #1\$8freeng\$aMaclean\$bIan\$f19...\$cexpert auprès de l'UNESCO

EX 2

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0

101 ##\$aFRE

152 ##\$aAFNOR

200 #1\$aMasson\$bAndré\$f1930-....

André Masson translates works from English or from German into French

EX 3

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
 101 ##\$amul
 152 ##\$aAFNOR
 210 12\$aCongrès européen de systématique\$d1\$f1989\$eLausanne, Suisse

EX 4

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
 101 ##\$aund
 152 ##\$aAFNOR
 210 02\$aStamperia Camerale\$cRome, Italie
 Stamperia Camerale is a printing company created in 1589.

EX 5

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
 101 ##\$afre
 152 ##\$aAFNOR
 220 ##\$aHugo (famille)

EX 6

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
 101 ##\$amyn
 152 ##\$aAFNOR
 230 ##\$8fremyn\$aChilam Balam
 Chilam Balam is a generic term to name a group of 14 Maya texts written in Latin script.

EX 7

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDahrvy0103####ba0
 101 ##\$aeng\$chr
 152 ##\$aPPIAK
 230 ##\$aUlriks\$mhrv. prijevod

EX 8

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDaengy01#####ba0
 101 ##\$afre\$sceng
 152 ##\$aAFNOR
 230 ##\$a#NSB#Le #NSE#malade imaginaire\$mEnglish & French

EX 9

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDarusy0102####ca0
 101 ##\$arus\$alez
 152 ##\$aRCR
 200 #0\$aЕтим Эмин\$f1838-1884
 Etim Emin is a Lezghin poet, wrote both in Russian and his native language.

EX 10

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDarusy0102####ca0
 101 ##\$arus
 152 ##\$aRCR
 230 ##\$aБорис Годунов
 “Boris Godunov” – tragedy by Alexander Pushkin.

102 NATIONALITY OF THE ENTITY

Field Definition

This field contains coded information relating to the nationality of a person, corporate body, family, trademark, printer/publisher device, or a work.

Occurrence

Mandatory when applicable. Not repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)
Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Country of nationality

Contains a code representing the country of which the person or a family is a national or citizen, where the corporate body or the trademark is headquartered, the country with which the printer/publisher device is identified or where the work is composed. The codes are to be taken from the two-character codes of ISO 3166-1 (see Appendix B of the *UNIMARC Manual: Bibliographic Format*). Where an agency does not assign specific codes to this field “XX” (unknown) should be used. Mandatory. Repeatable.

\$b Locality

A code representing the locality, where a more specific code is required. The codes are to be taken from ISO 3166-2. Optional. Repeatable if there is more than one country code.

Notes on Field Contents

Any locality code should follow immediately after the country code to which it refers. When it is necessary to record more than one locality within the same country, it is recommended for ease of processing that the country code be repeated in each case, i.e., that each subfield \$b be preceded by a subfield \$a.

Additional codes:

XX nationality unknown (UNIMARC user-assigned code element)

ZZ international or multiple nationalities (i.e., more than 3)

The code XX may be used when the nationality is unknown or non applicable (e.g., a work of art or an ancient country).

Related Fields

340 BIOGRAPHY AND ACTIVITY NOTE

Examples

EX 1

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0

101 ##\$aeng
 102 ##\$aXX
 152 ##\$aAFNOR
 200 #1\$8freeng\$aMaclean\$bIan\$f19...\$cexpert auprès de l'UNESCO
 The authority record writer cannot determine the nationality of the expert.

EX 2

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
 101 ##\$aFRE
 102 ##\$aFR\$aCH
 152 ##\$aAFNOR
 200 #1\$aScheider\$bEdgar\$f1929-1996
 The person has a double nationality : French and Swiss.

EX 3

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDaengy0103####ba0
 101 ##\$aGER\$aeng
 102 ##\$aUS\$aDE
 152 ##\$aAACR2
 200 #1\$aArendt\$bHannah\$f1906-1975
 340 ##\$aGerman by birth. Naturalized American in 1951

EX 4

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
 101 ##\$aUND
 102 ##\$aXX
 152 ##\$aAFNOR
 200 #1\$aFoppens\$bFrançois\$f16..-17..\$cprimeur libraire prétendu
 It is not possible to determine the nationality of this bogus printer-publisher.

EX 5

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
 101 ##\$aGER
 102 ##\$aDE
 152 ##\$aAFNOR
 210 02\$8freger\$aGoethe Institut\$cBarcelone, Espagne

EX 6

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
 101 ##\$aMUL
 102 ##\$aZZ
 152 ##\$aAFNOR
 210 12\$8frefre\$aCongrès européen de systématique\$d01\$f1989\$eLausanne, Suisse

EX 7

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
 101 ##\$aFRE
 102 ##\$aFR
 152 ##\$aAFNOR
 220 ##\$aHugo (famille)

EX 8

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
 101 ##\$ahun
 102 ##\$aHU
 152 ##\$aAFNOR
 200 #1\$8frehun\$aKodály,\$bZoltán,\$f1882-1967

The author is Hungarian.

EX 9

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDaengy01#####ba0
 101 ##\$aeng
 102 ##\$aGB\$bSCT
 200 #1\$aMcGonagall,\$bWilliam,\$f1825-1902

The author is Scottish.

EX 10

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDaengy01#####ba0
 101 ##\$arus\$aeng
 102 ##\$aRU\$aUS
 200 #1\$8engrus\$aNabokov,\$bVladimir,\$f1899-1977

The author is regarded as being both American and Russian.

EX 11

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDarusy0102####ca0
 102 ##\$aRU\$bCU
 152 ##\$aRCR
 200 #1\$aКибеч,\$bА. И.,\$f1937- \$gАнатолий Ильич

Professor of Chuvash State Pedagogical University (Cheboksary, Russia).

EX 12

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDarusy0102####ca0
 102 ##\$aGB
 152 ##\$aRCR
 210 02\$a≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠Фонд вольной русской прессы≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠, издательство
 \$cЛондон

EX 13

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDarusy0102####ca0
 102 ##\$aRU\$bALT
 152 ##\$aRCR
 210 02\$aАлтайская краевая универсальная научная библиотека им. В. Я. Шишкова
 \$cБарнаул

**106 CODED DATA FIELD: PERSONAL/CORPORATE/FAMILY
NAME/TRADEMARK/PRINTER/PUBLISHER DEVICE USED
AS SUBJECT ACCESS POINT**

Field Definition

This field contains fixed length coded data relating to the use of the access point as subject access point. It is applicable to a name of person, a corporate body, family, trademark or a printer/publisher device.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)

Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Coded data – use in subject access point

A one character code. Mandatory. Not repeatable.

0 = may be used as subject access point

1 = cannot be used as subject access point

2 = may be used only as subject access point

\$b Coded data – use in subject access point as base access point or as subdivision

A one character code. Optional. Not repeatable.

= not applicable (e.g., if \$a contains value 1)

0 = can be used either as base access point or as subdivision

1 = can be used only as base access point

2 = can be used only as subdivision

\$c Coded data – use in topical subject access point with a geographical subdivision

A one character code. Optional. Not repeatable

= not applicable

0 = cannot be used with a geographical subdivision

1 = the access point allows a geographical subdivision, whether it is used as base access point or as subdivision

2 = the access point can be used with a geographical subdivision only if used as base access point

3 = the access point can be used with a geographical subdivision only if used as subdivision

Notes on Field Contents

The field is applicable to personal names, corporate body names, and family names, trademark or printer/publisher device (field is 200, 210, 216, 217 or 220).

Related Fields

- 200 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME
- 210 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME
- 216 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TRADEMARK
- 217 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PRINTER/PUBLISHER DEVICE
- 220 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME

Examples**EX 1**

```
100 ##$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
101 ##$afre
106 ##$a0$b1$c0
120 ##$aba
200 #1$aHugo$bVictor$f1802-1885
```

The name of person is both author and subject access point.

EX 2

```
100 ##$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
101 ##$afre
106 ##$a0$b1$c0
150 ##$ay
210 02$aCentre national d'art et de culture Georges Pompidou$cParis
```

The name of corporate body is both author and subject access point.

EX 3

```
100 ##$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
101 ##$afre
106 ##$a0$b1$c0
220 ##$aGaillard$cfamille
```

The name of family is both author and subject access point.

EX 4

```
100 ##$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
101 ##$afre
106 ##$a1$b#$c#
120 ##$aba
200 #0$8frefre$aSan Antonio
```

The name of person cannot be used as subject access point; for subject usage, use the access point: Dard, Frédéric (1921-2000).

EX 5

```
100 ##$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
106 ##$a2$b1$c0
120 ##$axa
200 #0$8freita$aPinocchio$cpersonnage fictif
```

The name of person may be used only as subject access point.

EX 6

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
106 ##\$a0\$b1\$c0
216 ##\$aLa voix de son maître

EX 7

106 ##\$a0\$b0\$c2
210 02\$aChurch of England
330 0#\$aS'emploi également en subdivision aux sujets religieux et aux guerres

The name of corporate body is both author and subject access point. As subject access point, it can be used both as base access point or as subdivision (for a base access point dealing with religious matters or with wars), but it admits a geographical subdivision only when used as base access point.

EX 8

106 ##\$a2\$b2\$c0
250 ##\$aCongrès

The topical subject, which is a form subdivision, can be used only as a subdivision in a subject access point and admits no geographical subdivision.

EX 9

106 ##\$a2\$b1\$c1
250 ##\$aOiseaux

The topical subject can be used only as subject base access point. It admits a geographical subdivision.

EX 10

106 ##\$a2\$b0\$c3
106 ##\$a2\$b0\$c3
215 ##\$aFrance

The geographic name can be used only as a subject access point either as base access point or as subdivision. It can be used with a geographical subdivision, but only if used as a subdivision.

EX 11

106 ##\$a2\$b0\$c0
215 ##\$aNew York (N.Y.)

The geographic name can be used only as a subject access point, either as base access point or as subdivision. It does not admit a geographical subdivision.

EX 12

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDarusy0102####ca0
106 ##\$a1
152 ##\$aRCR
210 02\$aГосударственный Эрмитаж\$cСанкт-Петербург

The name of corporate body cannot be used as subject access point.

EX 13

Record 1

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDarusy0102####ca0

106 ##\$a1

152 ##\$apsbo

210 01\$aГермания\$bВерховное главнокомандование вооруженными
силами\$bУправление разведки и контрразведки

Record 2

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDarusy0102####ca0

106 ##\$a2\$b1

152 ##\$anlr_sh

210 02\$aАбвер

Different forms of a corporate body name used in accordance with descriptive cataloguing rules and subject system. As a subject access point, it can be used only as a base access point.

120 CODED DATA FIELD: PERSONAL NAME

Field Definition

This field contains fixed length coded data applicable to authority records in which tag 200 is present.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)
Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Coded data: personal names

A two-character code. Optional. Not repeatable.

List of fixed length data elements:

Name of data element	Number of Characters	Character Position
Gender of entity	1	0
Differentiated or undifferentiated personal name	1	1

0 Gender of Entity

A one character alphabetic code is used to describe the gender of the entity identified in the 200 authorized access point.

a = female (the entity in 200 is female)
b = male (the entity in 200 is male)
c = transgender (the entity in 200 has changed gender)
u = unknown (i.e., the gender of the entity cannot be determined)
x = not applicable (the entity in 200 does not have a gender)

1 Differentiated or Undifferentiated Personal Name

A one character alphabetic code is used to distinguish differentiated or undifferentiated personal names.

a = differentiated personal name

The authority record identifies a single identity, because the entity in 200 is distinguished from all other entities of the same name by the addition of qualifying data, e.g.: dates of birth or death; title of nobility; honorifics and terms of address; descriptive epithets and other additions defined by the cataloguing rules used by the agency.

b = undifferentiated personal name

The authority record may identify several identities because the entity in 200 cannot be distinguished from other entities of the same name.

Examples**EX 1**

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDaengy0103####ba0
 101 ##\$aeng
 120 ##\$aaa
 200 #1\$aChristie,\$bAgatha,\$f1890-1976

Note: the entity is female and the name is differentiated by the addition of dates of birth and death.

EX 2

Record 1
 100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDaengy0103####ba0
 101 ##\$aeng
 120 ##\$aba
 200 #1\$aMorris,\$bJames,\$f1926-
 500 #1\$aMorris,\$bJan,\$f1926-
 810 ##\$aHis Coast to coast, 1956.

Record 2
 100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDaengy0103####ba0
 101 ##\$aeng
 120 ##\$aca
 200 #1\$aMorris,\$bJan,\$f1926-
 340 ##\$aJames Humphry Morris, 10-2-26; had a sex change operation, took new name "Jan Morris"; intends to complete a trilogy using James Morris, will publish other future books as Jan Morris
 500 #1\$aMorris,\$bJames,\$f1926-
 810 ##\$aA Machynlleth triad, 1995\$bt.p. (Jan Morris)

EX 3

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDaengy0103####ba0
 120 ##\$aub
 200 #1\$aSmith,\$bJ.
 340 ##\$aAuthor of The art of poster making
 810 ##\$aThe art of poster making, 1989:\$bt.p. (J. Smith)
 340 ##\$aAuthor of Peter's pip
 810 ##\$aPeter's pip, 1986:\$bt.p. (J. Smith) [Another author?]

Note: The gender is unknown because it cannot be determined from the name in 200; the access point in 200 is undifferentiated because no distinguishing data is available.

EX 4

Record 1
 100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDaengy0103####ba0
 101 ##\$alat
 102 ##\$a
 120 ##\$aba
 200 #1\$8englat\$aAntonius,\$bMarcus,\$cOrator,\$f143-87 b.C.

Record 2
 100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDaengy0103####ba0
 101 ##\$alat
 102 ##\$aXX

120 ##\$aba
200 #1\$8englat\$aAntonius,\$bMarcus,\$cTriumvir,\$f82-30 b.C.

In example 4, two authors of the same name have been differentiated by the addition of descriptive epithets and dates of birth and death.

EX 5

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDarusy0102####ca0
120 ##\$aub
152 ##\$aRCR
200 #1\$aВыдревич\$bГ. С.

The gender cannot be determined from the name in 200. The name is unqualified because no additional information is available.

EX 6

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDarusy0102####ca0
120 ##\$aba
152 ##\$aRCR
200 #1\$aКары-Ниязов\$bТ. Н.\$f1897-1970\$gТашмухамед Ниязович

123 CODED DATA FIELD: TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME

Field Definition

This field contains the co-ordinate data of the entity described in block 2--.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)

Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$d Co-ordinates – Westernmost Longitude.

\$e Co-ordinates – Easternmost Longitude.

\$f Co-ordinates – Northernmost Latitude.

\$g Co-ordinates – Southernmost Latitude.

Co-ordinates for planetary or terrestrial items. Each subfield is fixed at 8 characters and is optional and not repeatable. Each contains the following data:

Character position 0

Hemisphere: one-character code:

w = west

e = east

n = north

s = south

Character positions 1 to 3

Degree: 3 numeric characters, right justified, filled with zeros

Character positions 4 to 5

Minute: 2 numeric characters, right justified, filled with zeros

Character positions 6 to 7

Second: 2 numeric characters, right justified, filled with zeros

Notes on Field Contents

When the co-ordinates for a map or plan are given in terms of a centre point rather than outside limits, the longitude and latitude that form the central axes are each recorded twice, in subfields \$d and \$e (longitude) and subfields \$f and \$g (latitude).

Related Fields

215 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHIC NAME

260 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION,
PERFORMANCE, PROVENANCE, ETC.

Examples

EX 1

123 ##\$de0790000\$ee0860000\$fn0200000\$gn0120000

215 ##\$aIndia

India: longitude 79°E to 86°E, latitude 20°N to 12°N.

EX 2

123 ## \$de0122000\$ee0122000\$fn0452600\$gn0452600

Venezia: 45.26 N (Northernmost Latitude) 12.20 E (Easternmost Longitude).

150 CODED DATA FIELD: CORPORATE NAME**Field Definition**

When the access point in the 2-- authorized access point field is a name (corporate, meeting, or geographic name), then this coded data field is used to convey additional information about the name.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)

Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Type of government agency

A one-character code indicates whether the access point is for a government organization. (Academic institutions are not considered government agencies.) Mandatory. Not repeatable.

a = federal/national

b = state/province

c = county/department

d = local (municipal, etc.)

e = multi-local (interstate compacts, etc., below the national level)

f = intergovernmental

g = government in exile or clandestine

h = level not determined

u = unknown

y = not a government organization

z = other government level

\$b Conference or meeting code

A one-character code indicating whether the corporate body is a meeting. Meetings include conferences, symposia, etc., as defined in the cataloguing codes; they may be entered directly under their own name or not (see field 210, indicator 1). Optional. Not repeatable.

0 = the corporate body is not a conference/meeting

1 = the corporate body is conference/meeting

Examples

EX 1

150 ##\$ay\$b0

210 02\$aBrunel University.\$bEducation Liaison Centre

EX 2

150 ##\$ab\$b0
210 01\$aOntario.\$bOffice of Arbitration

EX 3

150 ##\$aa\$b0
210 01\$aUnited States.\$bDepartment of Defense

EX 4

150 ##\$ay\$b1
210 02\$a\$aLabour Party\$c(Great Britain).\$bConference\$d(72nd ;\$f1972 ;\$eBlackpool, Lancashire)

EX 5

150 ##\$ay\$b1
210 12\$aColloque André Chammson\$f2000\$eNîmes

EX 6

150 ##\$ay\$b1
210 12\$aUniversité d'été du tourisme rural\$d10\$f2000\$eManosque, Alpes-de-Haute-Provence

EX 7

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDarusy0102####ca0
150 ##\$ay\$b1
152 ##\$aRCR
210 12\$aПроблемы развития минерально-сырьевой базы платиновых металлов России, научно-практическая конференция\$f1995\$eПетрозаводск

EX 8

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDarusy0102####ca0
150 ##\$ay\$b0
152 ##\$aRCR
210 02\$aРоссийская академия адвокатуры\$bНовосибирский институт\$bЦентр сравнительного трудового права

EX 9

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDarusy0102####ca0
150 ##\$aa\$b0
152 ##\$aRCR
210 01\$aРоссийская Федерация\$bГосударственная Дума

EX 10

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDarusy0102####ca0
150 ##\$ag\$b0
152 ##\$aRCR
210 01\$aФинляндия\$bТерийокское правительство\$c1939-1940

152 RULES

Field Definition

This field identifies the rule system under which the 2-- authorized access point and its accompanying reference structure were formulated.

Occurrence

Mandatory. Not repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)
Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Cataloguing rules

This subfield identifies the cataloguing rules used to formulate the access point/reference structure. This would be applicable for most names, titles, and name/titles. The cataloguing rules should be specified using the codes from Appendix H of the *UNIMARC Manual: Bibliographic Format* or the full name of the rules. For display, codes can be used to generate the abbreviations specified in *Guidelines for Authorities and Reference Records*, Appendix C. Optional. Not repeatable.

\$b Subject system

This subfield identifies the subject or subject category system used to formulate the access point/reference structure. This would be especially applicable to topical subjects, but is applicable to names and titles, as well as subject categories. In some systems, a access point/reference structure may be formulated under cataloguing rules but also be used in a subject system. Thus the name would be coded for both the descriptive rules and the subject system. The codes from Appendix G of the *UNIMARC Manual: Bibliographic Format* or the full name of the thesaurus may be used to specify the subject or category system. Optional. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The \$a subfield identifies the cataloguing rules used to formulate the access point/reference structure. This would be applicable for most names, titles, and name/titles. The cataloguing rules should be specified using the codes from Appendix H of the *UNIMARC Manual: Bibliographic Format* or the full name of the rules. For display, codes can be used to generate the abbreviations specified in Bell, Barbara L. *An Annotated Guide to Current National Bibliographies*. – 2nd completely rev. ed. – München: K. G. Saur, 1998; see *List of abbreviations and acronyms*, pp. vii-ix.

The \$b subfield identifies the subject system used to formulate the access point/reference structure. This would be especially applicable to topical subjects, but is applicable to names and titles also. In some systems, a access point/reference structure may be formulated under cataloguing rules but also be used in a subject system. Thus the name would be coded for both the descriptive rules and the subject system. The codes from Appendix G of the *UNIMARC Man-*

ual: *Bibliographic Format* or the full name of the thesaurus may be used to specify the subject system.

Examples

EX 1

152 ##\$aAACR2\$b lc
200 #1\$aShai,\$bMordekhai

EX 2

152 ##\$b lc
215 ##\$aRed River Valley (Minn. and N.D.-Man.)

EX 3

152 ##\$aAACR2\$b lc
200 #1\$aWagner,\$bRichard,\$f1813-1883\$xPictorial works

EX 4

152 ##\$aAACR2\$bcaf
230 ##\$aSérie d'études de la réglementation gouvernementale

EX 5

152 ##\$aAACR2
215 ##\$aCeylon

EX 6

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDarusy0102####ca0
152 ##\$aRCR
200 #1\$aГребенщиков\$bГ. Д.\$f1883-1964\$gГеоргий Дмитриевич

EX 7

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDarusy0102####ca0
152 ##\$aRCR
230 ##\$aСказание о призвании варягов

154 CODED DATA FIELD: TITLE**Field Definition**

When the access point carried in the 2-- authorized access point field is a title, this coded data field may be used to convey additional information.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)

Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Title processing data

A two-character code. Mandatory. Not repeatable.

List of fixed length data elements:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Position
Type of series code	1	0
Type of entity code	1	1

0 Type of Series Code

A one-character code indicates the type of series when the access point is a title of a series.

a = monographic series

b = multipart item (e.g., kit, score and parts, multivolume monograph)

c = series-like phrase (not to be considered a series)

x = not applicable

z = other

1 Type of Entity Code

A one-character code indicates the type of entity when the access point is an authorized title access point for a work or an expression.

a = work

b = expression

x = not applicable

Related Fields

230 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE

Examples

EX 1

154 ##\$aax

230 ##\$aCBMS regional conference series in mathematics

EX 2

154 ##\$abx

230 ##\$aCambridge history of Iran

EX 3

154 ##\$acx

230 ##\$aViking books

160 GEOGRAPHIC AREA CODE

Field Definition

This field contains the geographic area codes for geographic areas associated with the 2-- authorized access point in an established access point record.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)
Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Geographic area code
Mandatory. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The coding scheme contains seven alphabetic characters and hyphens and, so far as possible, provides a hierarchical breakdown of geographic and political entities. The UNIMARC geographic area codes are used. They are listed in Appendix D of the *UNIMARC Manual: Bibliographic Format*.

Related Fields

260 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION,
PERFORMANCE, PROVENANCE, ETC.

Examples

EX 1

160 ##\$an-us-mi
200 #1\$aFord,\$bGerald R.,\$f1913-\$xMuseums\$zMichigan

EX 2

160 ##\$ae-fr---\$ae-pl---
240 ##\$1215##\$aFrance.\$1230##\$aTreaties, etc.\$nPoland,\$k1948 Mar. 2

EX 3

160 ##\$ae-gx---
230 ##\$aBible\$zGermany

EX 4

160 ##\$an-cn---
250 ##\$aCanadian Grand Prix Race

EX 5

160 ##\$af-ke---

250 ##\$aWater resources development\$zKenya

EX 6

160 ##\$asa-----

215 ##\$aAmazon River

CONTROL SUBFIELDS

Definition and Scope of Subfields

These subfields are defined for all 2-- authorized, 4-- variant and 5-- related access points, and 7-- authorized access point in other language and/or script fields although they are only used under specific circumstances, thus will never occur in some blocks. Several of these subfields may also appear in the 3-- Note fields. The introductory sections for each of these blocks indicates which of these subfields may appear in those blocks. When these subfields are used they precede all other subfields in the field.

Notes on Subfield Contents

The following subfields are used to carry additional information about an access point, or note.

- \$0 Instruction Phrase
- \$1 Linking Data
- \$2 System Code
- \$3 Authority Record Identifier
- \$5 Relationship Control
- \$6 Interfield Linking Data
- \$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point
- \$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

\$0 Instruction Phrase**Subfield Definition**

This subfield \$0 (zero) contains a special introductory phrase that can be used when displaying a particular access point as a reference. The instruction phrase may be carried in lieu of or in addition to the Relationship Code in subfield \$5. See Guidelines for Use, (11), Display of Reference and Authority Records, for additional discussion of this and related subfields.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable. The instruction phrase may be used with 4-- variant and 5-- related access point fields.

Notes on Subfield Contents

The subfield contains a text phrase.

Examples**EX 1**

Authority *record*:

200 #1\$aOrwell,\$bGeorge

400 #1\$0For works of this author see his pseudonym:\$aBlair,\$bEric Arthur

Reference record *display*:

Blair, Eric Arthur

For works of this author see his pseudonym: > Orwell, George

Note: The instruction phrase serves to introduce the 200 authorized access point in the reference generated from the reference tracing.

EX 2

Record 1 Authority *record*

210 01\$aFrance\$bMinistère de la culture et de la communication\$c1997-....

510 01\$0Après le 4 juin 1997, voir\$3frBN011535673\$5a\$aFrance\$bMinistère de la culture\$c1995-1997

Note: The instruction phrase indicates that before the 4th of June 1997, see \$aFrance\$bMinistère de la Culture\$c1995-1997.

Record 2 Authority *record*

210 01\$aFrance\$bMinistère de la culture\$c1995-1997

510 01\$0Avant le 4 juin 1997, voir\$3frBN012345678\$5b\$aFrance\$bMinistère de la culture et de la communication\$c1997-

EX 3

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDarusy0102####ca0

152 ##\$aRCR

210 02\$aВсероссийское театральное общество

300 1#\$aС октября 1986 г. переименовано в Союз театральных деятелей РСФСР

510 02\$0До 1986 г. см. также под прежним заголовком\$5b\$aСоюз театральных деятелей РСФСР

The corporate body changed its name in 1986. The instruction phrase says: “Before 1986 see also...”.

Reference *display*:

Союз театральных деятелей РСФСР

До 1986 г. см. также под прежним заголовком: Всероссийское театральное о-во

EX 4

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDarusy0102####ca0

152 ##\$anlr_sh

250 ##\$aРеволюционный Знак Военного Отличия, орден

450 ##\$0Литературу об этом ордене до 1924 года см. под рубрикой\$5b\$aОрден
Красного Знамени

Reference *display*:

Орден Красного Знамени

Литературу об этом ордене до 1924 года см. под рубрикой Революционный Знак
Военного Отличия

\$1 Linking Data

Subfield Definition

This subfield is used in composite access points which are composed of a name and title.

Occurrence

Repeatable.

Notes on Subfield Contents

The subfield contains a data field complete with tag, indicators, and subfield codes for each embedded name/title field. Repeatable for each embedded field. See Guidelines for Use, (8), Format Use, Composite Access Points and 240 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE filed for additional description of the use of this subfield. For a fuller description of this technique see the *UNIMARC Manual: Bibliographic Format*, as it is the same as the one used in the UNIMARC 4-- Linking Entry Block.

Examples

EX 1

240 ##\$1200#1\$aShakespeare,\$bWilliam,\$f1564-1616.\$1230##\$aAll's well that ends well

\$2 System Code

Subfield Definition

This subfield identifies the cataloguing rules or subject system in which an access point belongs (1) when it is different from that of the record access point, which is specified in field 152, or (2) when a topical subject access point appears in a name or title authority record for an access point that is not appropriate for use as a subject. Generally a name, title, or a subject access point and its variant or related access points are part of the descriptive cataloguing or subject system specified in field 152, but access points as they would appear in another subject system, or in a system with different cataloguing rules may be carried as variant or related access points to provide links between systems.

This subfield also identifies the classification scheme used in field 686, and the format used for the machine-readable record, which is specified in fields 801 and 886. See Appendix H in *UNIMARC Manual: Bibliographic Format* for codes.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable. Other cataloguing rules and subject system code may be used in 4-- variant and 5-- related access point or 7-- authorized access point in other language and/or script fields.

Notes on Subfield Contents

A variable length alphabetic code with maximum length of seven characters is used. The codes that may be used are listed in Appendix H and G of the *UNIMARC Manual: Bibliographic Format*. Instructions for obtaining a code are also given in that publication.

Examples

EX 1

```
152  ##$blc
250  ##$aDentures
550  ##$2mesh$aDental prosthesis
```

\$3 Authority Record Identifier

Subfield Definition

This subfield identifies a record in which the access point in the field is the 2-- authorized access point.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable. It may be used in 5-- related access point and 7-- authorized access point in other language and/or script and 4-- variant access point fields, and 6-- classification and entity history block. In 5-- and 7-- access point fields, the related record is the authority record for the access point. In a 4-- variant access point fields, the related record is a reference record that is used for display in preference to generating a display from the 4--. Subfield \$3 may be used in a 4-- field when the 4-- also contains subfields \$2 (System Code) and \$5 (Relationship Control) in which character position 1 (Reference suppression code) contains value 0 (suppress reference).

Notes on Subfield Contents

Subfield \$3 contains a record identifier as defined in tag 001.

Examples

EX 1

210 02\$aNational Library of Canada
710 02\$382-539609\$8frefre\$aBibliothèque nationale du Canada

EX 2

152 ##\$aRCR
210 02\$aВсероссийский НИИ растениеводства им. Н. И. Вавилова\$cСанкт-Петербург
510 02\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\8817146\$5a\$aВсесоюзный институт прикладной ботаники и новых культур\$cЛенинград
510 02\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\8817144\$5a\$aВНИИ растениеводства им. Н. И. Вавилова\$cЛенинград

EX 3

152 ##\$bnlr_sh
215 ##\$aВеликое княжество Литовское
530 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661310904\$5z\$aЛитовский статут\$z1529

EX 4

152 ##\$bnlr_sh
200 #0\$aВильгельм\$dI Молчаливый\$спринц Оранский\$f1533 – 1584
550 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\66254765\$aНидерландская буржуазная революция\$z1566 – 1609

Examples 2 to 4 are records from the Russian national authority file.

\$5 Relationship Control

Subfield Definition

This subfield contains fixed position coded data pertinent to the use or display of 4-- and 5-- access point fields. If special instructions are not needed for a given field, the control subfield need not be used in that field. If it is used, the coding of any position mandates that each prior position be explicitly coded also. The fill character may be used in any position required solely because a subsequent position is needed. Any positions following the last one required for a field are omitted.

Thus if no specific relationship is to be given and no reference suppression information is needed, subfield \$5 does not appear. If only a relationship in character position 0 is needed, then subfield \$5 will contain only one character position with valid code. If only a reference suppression code is needed, then character position 0 will contain one-character code “x” (not applicable) or a fill character. If only a relationship in character position 2 or 3 is needed, character positions preceding the required one will contain one-character codes “x” or fill characters as appropriate. All character positions after the required ones do not appear.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable. This subfield may be used in 4-- and 5-- access point fields.

Notes on Subfield Contents

The following data elements are defined for subfield \$5:[align 2 & 3 below]

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Position
Name relationship code	1	0
Reference suppression code	1	1
Specific relationship code for works	1	2
Specific relationship code for agents	1	3

0 Name Relationship Code

A one-character alphabetic code indicates a specific relationship between forms of names of an entity which are recorded as the relationship between variant and related access points, and the 2-- authorized access point. The relationship code is used to generate the instruction phrase when displaying the reference traced in the field (as indicated in the table below). The relationship expressed is thus semantically the obverse of the instruction phrase generated for the reference. The meaning of the relationship code may be used directly when displaying an authority record (see example below). The use of a special phrase is optional when displaying a record, however. It is not incorrect to use the > or >> instruction alone.

The relationship code may be used with 4-- and 5-- access point fields. See Guidelines for Use, (11), Display of Reference and Authority Records, for additional discussion of this and related subfields. The following code values are defined:

- a = earlier name
- b = later name
- c = official name
- d = acronym / initial / abbreviation
- e = pseudonym

f = real name
g = broader term or name
h = narrower term or name
i = name in religion
j = married name
k = name before marriage
l = shared pseudonym
m = secular name
n = different rule form of a name (if used, \$2 is mandatory)
o = attributed name / conventional title of a work
x = not applicable
z = other

Example of instructional phrases generated from relationship codes (in English):

Relationship code and relationship information	Reference display instruction phrase, from 4-- field	Reference display instruction phrase, from 5-- field
a = earlier name	see under later name:	see also under later name:
b = later name	see under earlier name:	see also under earlier name:
c = official name	see under real name:	see also under real name:
d = acronym	see under expanded form:	see also under expanded form:
e = pseudonym	see under the author's real name:	see also under the author's real name:
f = real name	see under the pseudonym:	see also under the pseudonym:
g = broader term	see under narrower term:	see also under narrower term:
h = narrower term	see under broader term:	see also under broader term:
i = name in religion	see under the author's secular name:	see also under the author's secular name:
j = married name	see under the author's name before marriage:	see also under the author's name before marriage:
k = name before marriage	see under the author's married name:	see also under the author's married name:
l = shared pseudonym	see under the authors' real name:	see also under the authors' real name:
m = secular name	see under the author's name in religion:	see also under the author's name in religion:
n = different rule form of a name	see under valid rule form of the name:	see also under valid rule form of the name:
o = attributed name/ conventional title of a work	see under real name / original title of the work:	see also under real name / original title of the work:

Examples of Name Relationship Code

EX1

Authority *record*:

210 02\$aDunedin Savings Bank

510 02\$5a\$aOtago Savings Bank

Authority record *display*:

Dunedin Savings Bank
 << Otago Savings Bank (earlier name)

Note: the value "a" in the \$5 was used to display the relationship information "(earlier name)" in this authority entry record display, in addition to its intended use to generate the instruction phrase for the reference entry display illustrated below.

Reference *display*:

Otago Savings Bank
 See also under later name: Dunedin Savings Bank

EX 2

200 #1\$aOrwell\$bGeorge
 400 #1\$5f\$aBlair\$bEric Arthur

Note: Eric Arthur Blair wrote under the pseudonym George Orwell.

EX 3

210 02\$aCoopération et aménagement\$cFrance
 510 02\$5a\$aSecrétariat des missions d'urbanisme et d'habitat\$cFrance

Reference *display*:

Secrétariat des missions d'urbanisme et d'habitat (France)
 See also under later access point: Coopération et aménagement (France)

EX 4

152 ##\$aAFNOR
 200 #0\$aMarie et Joseph
 300 0#\$aAuteurs de romans policiers (pour adultes et enfants). – Pseudonyme collectif de Corinne Bouchard (qui écrit aussi sous le nom Corinne Arbore) (pseudonyme Marie), née le 4 novembre 1958 et de Pierre Mezinski (pseudonyme Joseph), né le 1er juillet 1950; commencent à écrire en 1990 séparément sous leurs patronymes, mais n'ont à ce jour jamais écrit séparément sous le prénom choisi par chacun comme pseudonyme.
 500 #1\$5f\$aBouchard\$bCorinne\$f1958
 500 #1\$5f\$aMezinski\$bPierre\$f1950-

EX 5

230 ##\$aAbschied\$sD597 n°7
 530 ##\$5h\$aSchwanengesang\$sD957 et 965A

Note: the value "h" in the \$5 is used by the agency which does not use character position 2 to define the specific relationship between works.

EX 6

Record 1: Pseudonym
 152 ##\$aRPC
 200 #1\$aGedeão,\$bAntônio,\$cpseud.
 340 ##\$aPoeta. Romancista
 305 0#\$aPara a obra científica, ver também\$bCarvalho, Rómulo de, 1906-1997
 400 #1\$aCarvalho,\$bRómulo Vasco da Gama de
 500 #1\$5f0\$aCarvalho,\$bRómulo de,\$f1906-1997

550 ##\$g\$Poetas portugueses\$zSéc. 20

Record 2: Real name

152 ##\$aRPC

200 #1\$aCarvalho,\$bRómulo de,\$f1906-1997

305 0#\$aPara a obra literária, ver também\$bGedeão, António, pseud.

340 ##\$aHistoriador. Lic. Ciências Físico-Químicas. Professor

400 #1\$aCarvalho,\$bRómulo de

400 #1\$aCarvalho,\$bRómulo Vasco da Gama de

500 #1\$e0\$aGedeão,\$bAntónio,\$cpseud.

EX 7

152 ##\$aRCR

210 02\$aВНИИ ветеринарной энтомологии и арахнологии\$cТюмень

305 0#\$aСоздан в 1973 на базе:\$bВНИИ ветеринарной санитарии и эктопаразитологии. Тюменский филиал

410 02\$z\$aИнститут ветеринарной энтомологии и арахнологии\$cТюмень

410 02\$5d\$aВНИИВЭА

510 02\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\889917912\$5a\$aВНИИ ветеринарной санитарии и эктопаразитологии\$bТюменский филиал

The corporate body in 210 (*ВНИИ ветеринарной энтомологии и арахнологии (Тюмень)*) was created in 1973 on the basis of *ВНИИ ветеринарной санитарии и эктопаразитологии. Тюменский филиал*. The record contains corresponding note in 305 and earlier form of corporate name in 510 field with relationship code in \$5/0=a (earlier name). Also the record contains two 410 fields with variant forms of the name: abbreviation (\$5/0=d), and other form of the name (\$5/0=z).

EX 8

152 ##\$abnlr_sh

200 #0\$aЛука\$cВойно-Ясенецкий, Валентин Феликсович\$f1877 - 1961

400 #1\$5m\$aВойно-Ясенецкий\$bВ.И.\$gВалентин Феликсович\$f1877 - 1961

400 #0\$5z\$aЛука Крымский\$f1877 - 1961

510 00\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661237347\$5g\$aПравославная церковь русская
\$xИстория\$z20 в.

550 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661233118\$5g\$aХирургия\$xИстория\$yРоссия

The record contains two variant forms (secular name and other form of name) in 410 fields, and two related subject access points in 510 and 550, where \$5/0=g.

EX 9

152 ##\$bnlr_sh

200 #0\$aВиктория Федоровна\$свеликая княгиня\$f1876 – 1936

400 #0\$5k\$aВиктория Мелита\$f1876 – 1936

500 #0\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661269264\$5z\$aКирилл Владимирович\$свеликий
князь\$f1876 - 1938

520 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661238026\$5g\$aРомановы\$ссемья

520 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\66193735\$5g\$aГанноверская\$сдинастия английских королей
\$f1714 -1901

See this example with more exact codes used for expressing relationship between names in 5-- fields under \$5/3, EX 3.

EX 10

152 ##\$aRCR

210 02\$a≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠Автоагрегат≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠, акционерное общест-
во\$cШадринск
305 0#\$aДо 1993 г. см. в каталоге:\$bШадринский автоагрегатный завод
305 0#\$aС 1997 г. см. в каталоге:\$b"Шадринский автоагрегатный завод", открытое
акционерное общество
410 02\$5d\$aО ≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠Автоагрегат≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠
510 02\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\889934338\$5a0\$aШадринский автоагрегатный завод
510 02\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\8810066814\$5b0\$a≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠Шадринский
автоагрегатный завод≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠, открытое акционерное общество

EX 11

152 ##\$aRCR
200 #0\$aКукрыниксы\$cхудожники
305 #\$aКоллективный псевдоним художников: Куприянов Михаил
Васильевич\$bКрылов Порфирий Никитич\$bСоколов Николай Александрович
400 #1\$5f\$aКуприянов\$bМ. В.\$gМихаил Васильевич\$f1903-
500 #1\$5f0\$aКрылов\$bП. Н.\$gПорфирий Никитич\$f1902-
500 #1\$5f0\$aСоколов\$bН. А.\$gНиколай Александрович\$f1903-

EX 12

152 ##\$bnlr_sh
250 ##\$aБоевые машины пехоты
450 ##\$5d\$aБМП

1 Reference Suppression Code

A one-character numeric code indicates that a reference entry should not be automati-
cally generated from an access point in a 4-- field because a 305 reference note exists in
the authority record for the access point or a separate reference record for the access
point exists with a 310 reference note. In both cases it is intended that only the note
form of the reference should be used in displays.

0 = suppress reference
x = not applicable

Examples of Reference Suppression Code

EX 1

Record 1 (Reference record)

210 02\$aParibas
310 0#\$aVoir au\$bGroupe Paribas\$aet à sa compagnie holding de contrôle la\$bCompagnie
financière de Paribas\$aainsi qu'à ses filiales

Record 2 (Authority record)

210 02\$aGroupe Paribas
300 0#\$aGroupe multinational constitué par: la Compagnie financière de Paribas, société
holding de contrôle du Groupe; un ensemble de banques; de nombreuses participa-
tions, en particulier dans des entreprises industrielles et commerciales, regroupées
dans des sociétés holding spécialisées
410 02\$5z0\$aParibas

Record 3 (Authority record)

210 02\$aCompagnie financière de Paribas
300 0#\$a Société holding de contrôle du Groupe Paribas. Nationalisée en 1982
410 02\$5z0\$aParibas

EX 2

Record 1 (Authority record)

200 #1\$aJapp\$bAlexander H.\$gAlexander Hay\$f1839-1905

500 #1\$z0\$aGray\$bE. Condor\$f1839-1905

500 #1\$z0\$aPage\$bH. A.\$f1839-1905

305 0#\$aFor works of this author written under pseudonyms, search also under\$bGray, E. Condor, 1839-1905\$aand\$bPage, H.A., 1839-1905

Record 2 (Authority record)

200 #1\$aGray\$bE. Condor \$f1839-1905

500 #1\$z0\$aJapp\$bAlexander H.\$gAlexander Hay\$f1839-1905

305 0#\$aFor works of this author written under his real name, search also under\$bJapp, Alexander H.(Alexander Hay), 1839-1905

Record 3 (Authority record)

200 #1\$aPage\$bH. A.\$f1839-1905

500 #1\$z0\$aJapp\$bAlexander H.\$gAlexander Hay\$f1839-1905

305 0#\$aFor works of this author written under his real name, search also under\$bJapp, Alexander H.(Alexander Hay), 1839-1905

EX 3

Authority *record*

200 #0\$aMarie de la Trinité\$cdominicaine\$f1903-1980

300 0#\$aNom en religion de : Rosa Boiral. – Dominicaine au Monastère Sainte-Catherine de Langeac (43300, Haute-Loire)

400 #1\$5m\$aBoiral,\$bRosa

Authority record *display*

Marie de la Trinité (dominicaine ; 1903-1980)

< Boiral, Rosa (Nom dans le siècle)

Reference *display*

Boiral, Rosa

Voir sous nom en religion > Marie de la Trinité, dominicaine, 1903-1980

Note : Marie de la Trinité is the religious name of Rosa Boiral.

EX 4

Record 1 (Authority record)

210 01\$aConnecticut.\$bDept. of Social Services

300 0#\$aIn Jan. 1979 the Connecticut Dept. of Social Services split to form the Dept. of Human Resources and the Dept. of Income Maintenance.

305 0#\$aWorks by these bodies are found under the following access points according to the name used at the time of publication:\$bConnecticut. Dept. of Social Services;\$bConnecticut. Dept. of Human Resources;\$bConnecticut. Dept. of Income Maintenance

330 1#\$aWorks about these bodies are entered under one or more of the names resulting from the separation. Works limited in coverage to the pre-separation period are entered under the name of the original body.

410 01\$aConnecticut.\$bSocial Services, Dept. of

510 01\$3<authority record identifier>\$5b0\$aConnecticut.\$bDept. of Human Resources

510 01\$3<authority record identifier>\$5b0\$aConnecticut.\$bDept. of Income Maintenance

Record 2 (Authority record)

210 01\$aConnecticut.\$bDept. of Income Maintenance

300 0#\$aIn Jan. 1979 the Connecticut Dept. of Social Services split to form the Dept. of Human Resources and the Dept. of Income Maintenance.

305 0#\$aWorks by these bodies are found under the following access points according to the name used at the time of publication:\$bConnecticut. Dept. of Social Services;\$bConnecticut. Dept. of Human Resources;\$bConnecticut. Dept. of Income Maintenance

330 1#\$aWorks about these bodies are entered under one or more of the names resulting from the separation. Works limited in coverage to the pre-separation period are entered under the name of the original body.

410 01\$aConnecticut.\$bIncome Maintenance, Dept. of

510 01\$3<authority record identifier>\$5a0\$aConnecticut.\$bDept. of Social Services

510 01\$3<authority record identifier>\$5z0\$aConnecticut.\$bDept. of Human Resources

Record 3 (Authority record)

210 01\$aConnecticut.\$bDept. of Human Resources

300 0#\$aIn Jan. 1979 the Connecticut Dept. of Social Services split to form the Dept. of Human Resources and the Dept. of Income Maintenance.

305 0#\$aWorks by these bodies are found under the following access points according to the name used at the time of publication:\$bConnecticut. Dept. of Social Services;\$bConnecticut. Dept. of Human Resources;\$bConnecticut. Dept. of Income Maintenance

330 1#\$aWorks about these bodies are entered under one or more of the names resulting from the separation. Works limited in coverage to the pre-separation period are entered under the name of the original body

410 01\$aConnecticut.\$bHuman Resources, Dept. of

510 01\$3<authority record identifier>\$5a0\$aConnecticut.\$bDept. of Social Services

510 01\$3<authority record identifier>\$5z0\$aConnecticut.\$bDept. of Income Maintenance

2 Specific Relationship Code for Works

A one-character alphabetic code indicates a specific work (or work/expression) to work (or work/expression) relationship which is recorded as the relationship between related access point for the title for work or work/expression, and the 2-- authorized access point for title for another work or work/expression. The relationship code is used to generate the instruction phrase when displaying the reference traced in the field (as indicated in the table below). The relationship expressed is thus semantically the obverse of the instruction phrase generated for the reference. The meaning of the relationship code may be used directly when displaying an authority record (see example below). The use of a special phrase is optional when displaying a record, however. It is not incorrect to use the > or >> instruction alone.

The relationship code may be used only in 5-- access point fields. See Guidelines for Use, (11), Display of Reference and Authority Records, for additional discussion of this and related subfields. The following code values are defined:

a = original work

b = variation or version of a work (such as editions, revisions, translations, summaries, abstracts, and digests)

c = adaptation or modification of a work (such as new works based on an earlier work, new works that are changes of genre, new works based on the style or thematic content of other work)

- d = whole work
e = part of the larger work
f = supplement or complement work (such as works intended to be used in conjunction with or to augment the related work, or intended to complement or to be a companion to another work)
g = related/accompanied work
h = successor or sequel/later work
i = predecessor or earlier work
k = works with common characteristics (such as works that have some characteristics in common, apart from the other relationships, e.g., same language)
x = not applicable
z = other (such as orthographic relationships, word order relationships, variant title relationships, etc.)

Example of instructional phrases generated from relationship codes (in English):

Relationship code and relationship information	Reference display instruction phrase, from 5-- field
a = original work	see also under title of the derived work(s):
b = variation or version of a work	see also under title of the original work:
c = adaptation or modification of a work	see also under title of the original work:
d = whole work	see also under title of part of the work:
e = part of the larger work	see also under title of the whole work:
f = supplement or complement work	see also under title of the related/ accompanied work:
g = related/accompanied work	see also under title of the supplement or complement work:
h = successor or sequel/later work	see also under title of the earlier work:
i = predecessor or earlier work	see also under title of the later work:
k = works with common characteristics	see also under title of work(s) with shared characteristics:

Examples of Specific Relationship Code for Works

EX 1

240 ##\$1200#1\$aShakespeare\$bWilliam\$f1564-1616\$1230##\$aCoriolanus
540 ##\$5xxc\$1200#1\$aBrecht\$bBertolt\$1230##\$aCoriolan von Shakespeare

EX 2

230 ##\$aAnthologie grecque
530 ##\$5xxe\$aAnthologie palatine
530 ##\$5x0e\$aAnthologie Planude
530 ##\$5xxe\$aCouronne

EX 3

230 ##\$aUnited States Catalog
530 ##\$5xxf\$aCumulative Book Index

EX 4

230 ##\$aHistorical dictionaries of Africa
530 ##\$5|h\$aAfrican historical dictionaries

3 Specific Relationship Code for Agents

A one-character alphabetic code indicates a specific relationship between persons, corporate bodies and families which is recorded as the relationship between the name related access point, and the 2-- name authorized access point. The relationship code is used to generate the instruction phrase when displaying the reference traced in the field (as indicated in the table below). The relationship expressed is thus semantically the obverse of the instruction phrase generated for the reference. The meaning of the relationship code may be used directly when displaying an authority record (see example below). The use of a special phrase is optional when displaying a record, however. It is not incorrect to use the > or >> instruction alone.

The relationship code may be used only in 5-- access point fields. See Guidelines for Use, (11), Display of Reference and Authority Records, for additional discussion of this and related subfields. The following code values are defined:

- c = descendant family relationship
- d = progenitor family relationship
- e = relationship in marriage
- j = sibling relationship
- g = parent relationship
- h = child relationship
- k = member (is member of)
- l = has member
- m = founder (has founded)
- n = founded by
- p = subordinate corporate body
- q = larger corporate body
- s = owner (owns)
- t = owned by
- z = other

Example of instructional phrases generated from relationship codes (in English):

Relationship code and relationship information	Reference display instruction phrase, from 5-- field
c = descendant family relationship	see also under the progenitor family's name:
d = progenitor family relationship	see also under the descendant family's name:
e = relationship in marriage	see also under spouse's name:
j = sibling relationship	see also under other sibling's name:
g = parent relationship	see also under the child's name:
h = child relationship	see also under the parent's name:
k = member (is member of)	see also under corporate body or family name:
l = has member	see also under person's name:
m = founder (has founded)	see also under corporate body name:
n = founded by	see also under family name:
p = subordinate corporate body's name	see also under larger corporate body's name:
q = larger corporate body's name	see also under subordinate corporate body's name:
s = owner's name	see also under corporate body name:
t = owned by	see also under family name:

Examples of Specific Relationship Code for Agents

EX 1

Record 1

200 #1\$aGrimm\$bJakob
300 0#\$aPisao i u suradnji s bratom Wilhelmom Grimmom
340 ##\$aGrimm, Jakob, njemački filolog i književnik, 1785.-1863.; Grimm, Wilhelm,
njemački filolog, brat Jakoba Grimma, 1786.-1859
400 #0\$aGrimm\$cBraća
400 #0\$aGrimm\$cBrothers
400 #0\$aGrimm\$cFratelli
400 #0\$aGrimm\$cFreres
400 #0\$aGrimm\$cGebrueder
400 #0\$aGrimm\$cVellezerit
[etc.]
400 #1\$aGrimm\$bJacob
500 #1\$5xxxj\$aGrimm\$bWilhelm

Note in English: Wrote also in collaboration with his brother Wilhelm Grimm.

Record 2

200 #1\$aGrimm\$bWilhelm
300 0#\$aPublikacije svih djela što ih je Wilhelm Grimm pisao zajedno sa svojim bratom
treba tražiti pod imenom Jakoba Grimma
400 #1\$aGrimm\$bVilhelm
500 #1\$5xxxj\$aGrimm\$bJakob

Note in English: Publications which Wilhelm Grimm wrote in collaboration with his brother see under the name of Jakob Grimm.

EX 2

Record 1 (Authority record)

220 ##\$aPicot de Gouberville\$cfamille
500 #1\$5xxxk\$aGouberville\$bGilles de\$f1521?-1578

Record 2 (Authority record)

200 #1\$aGouberville\$bGilles de\$f1521?-1578
520 ##\$5xxxl\$aPicot de Gouberville\$cfamille

EX 3

152 ##\$bnlr_sh
200 #0\$aВиктория Федоровна\$свеликая княгиня\$f1876 - 1936
400 #0\$5k\$aВиктория Мелита\$f1876 - 1936
500 #0\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661269264\$5xxxhe\$aКирилл Владимирович\$свеликий
князь\$f1876 - 1938
520 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661238026\$5xxxk\$aРомановы\$ссемья
520 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\66193735\$5xxxk\$aГанноверская\$сдинастия
английских королей\$f1714 – 1901

\$6 Interfield Linking Data

Subfield Definition

This subfield contains information allowing a field to be linked for processing purposes to other fields in the record.

Occurrence

Not repeatable. This subfield may be used in the 3-- information note and 4-- and 5-- access point fields.

Notes on Subfield Contents

Both of the fields being linked will contain a \$6 subfield as specified below. The subfield also contains a code indicating the reason for the link. The first two elements in the subfield must always be present when the subfield is used; the third element is optional.

Fixed Length Data Elements

The following data elements are defined for subfield \$6:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Position
Linking explanation code	1	0
Linking number	2	1-2
Tag of linked field	3	3-5

0 Linking Explanation Code

This code specifies the reason for the interfield linkage.

a = alternate script

z = other

1-2 Linking Number

This two-digit number is carried in subfield \$6 of each of the fields to be linked together. The function of the linking number is to permit matching of associated fields. (It is not intended to act in any way as a sequence or site number.) The linking number may be assigned at random, so long as it is identical in each of the fields to be linked together and does not duplicate the number used to link any other groups of fields in the record.

3-5 Tag of Linked Field

This data element indicates the tag of the field to which a link is being made. The element is optional. If the tag of the field being linked to is the same as the tag of the field being linked, this element would ordinarily be omitted.

Examples

EX 1

```
100 ##$aYYYYMMDDaenga50#####ba0
101 ##$ajpn
200 #1$8engjpn$aAndo,$bSizuo
```


200 #1\$7ba0ydb0y\$8engjpn\$a[Personal name in Japanese kanji]
400 #1\$6a03\$7ba0aba0a\$8engjpn\$aKasima,\$bYasuzo
400 #1\$6a03\$7ba0ydb0y\$8engjpn\$a[Personal name in Japanese kanji]
400 #1\$6a25\$7ba0yba0a\$8engjpn\$aTakai,\$bSyozo
400 #1\$6a25\$7ba0ydb0y\$8engjpn\$a[Personal name in Japanese kanji]

The cataloguing agency gives the vernacular and Roman forms of each access point and reference in its records. The optional tag is omitted from the linked fields.

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

Subfield Definition

This subfield identifies the scripts of cataloguing and the base access point when they are different from the information coded in the 1-- block. \$7 is used when a access points, or note is carried in multiple scripts, e.g., Japanese written in kanji or kana, Hebrew written in Hebrew script and Roman script.

Occurrence

Mandatory for parallel script data. Not repeatable. The \$7 subfield may be used with 2-- authorized access points, 3-- information note, 4-- variant and 5-- related access points, and 7-- authorized access point in other language and/or script fields. The script for the first 2-- authorized access point, and the default script for all other field content not otherwise designated by a \$7 subfield, is given in field 100, character positions 21-22. If there is more than one 2-- authorized access point, then the additional ones are included for their alternate scripts, and they will contain \$7 subfields indicating the script. See Guidelines for Use, (8), Alternative Script Data, for more discussion of scripts.

Notes on Subfield Contents

Subfield \$7 contains 8 character positions (designated as \$7/0, \$7/1, etc.) The first group of four characters relates to the script of cataloguing; the second group of four characters relates to the script of the base access point. Because the definitions of the codes in subfield \$7 are dependent on the character position in which they occur, the coding of any character position mandates that each character position contains a code or a fill character (|).

Fixed Length Data Elements

The following data elements are defined for subfield \$7:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
Script of cataloguing	2	0-1
Direction of the Script of cataloguing	1	2
Transliteration Scheme for script of cataloguing	1	3
Script of the base access point	2	4-5
Direction of script of the base access point	1	6
Transliteration scheme for script of the base access point	1	7

0-1/4-5 Script

A two-character alphabetic code specifies the script of cataloguing and of the base access point when the identical access point appears in the record in a different script. The following code values are used:

ba = Latin
ca = Cyrillic

ha = Hebrew
ia = Thai

da = Japanese -- script unspecified	ja = Devanagari
db = Japanese – kanji	ka = Korean
dc = Japanese – kana	la = Tamil
ea = Chinese	ma = Georgian
fa = Arabic	mb = Armenian
ga = Greek	zz = Other

2/6 Direction of the Script

One-character alphabetic codes specify the direction of the script(s). The following code values are used:

- 0 = left to right
- 1 = right to left

3/7 Transliteration Scheme

One-character alphabetic code specifies the transliteration scheme(s). For the transliteration scheme used for the first 2-- base access point, see also 100 \$a/12.

The following code values are used:

- a = ISO transliteration scheme
- b = Other
- c = Multiple transliterations: ISO or other schemes
- d = Transliteration table established by the National Bibliographic Agency
- e = Transliteration without any identified transliteration table
- f = Other identified transliteration scheme(s)
- y = Not applicable (no transliteration scheme used)

Examples

EX 1

```
100 ##$aYYYYMMDDaenga50#####ba0
101 ##$ajpn
210 02$7ba0yba0a$8engjpn$aNihon Toshokan Kyōkai$cCompany
210 02$7ba0ydb0y$8engjpn$a[Corporate name in Japanese kanji]$cCompany
300 0#$aReplaced Nihon Bunko Kyōkai and Dai Nippon Toshokan Kyōkai
```

Note: In both access points the language of cataloguing is English, and the language of the base access point is Japanese. In the first access point the script of cataloguing (100/21-22) and the script of the base access point (\$7/4-5) are both Latin, in logical order (\$7/2 & 6) and follow ISO transliteration rules (100\$a/12 and 210\$7/7). In the second access point, the script of cataloguing is still Latin (100/21-22), but the script of the base access point is Kanji (\$7/4-5). The script is in logical order (\$7/3), but the script of the base access point has not been transliterated.

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

Subfield Definition

This subfield identifies the language of cataloguing and the language of the base access point. A language may be used in 2-- preferred, 4-- and 5-- variant and related access points, and 7-- authorized access point in other language and/or script fields. See Guidelines for Use, (8), Parallel Data, for more discussion of language of cataloguing. The base access point is that part of the access point that identifies the entity, excluding any qualifying data. For example, in the access point:

200#1\$aNicolini da Sabbio\$bDomenico \$f15-- to 160-?\$cimprimeur-libraire

the base access point is "\$aNicolini da Sabbio\$bDomenico", and the language of this base access point is Italian. The language of cataloguing being French, the qualifiers are expressed in French, i.e., "\$cimprimeur-libraire".

Occurrence

Mandatory in each 7-- authorized access point in other language and/or script when parallel access points or parallel data. Optional in 2--, 4--, 5--. Not repeatable.

Notes on Subfield Contents

Subfield \$8 contains 6 character positions (designated as \$8/0, 8/1, etc.) The first group of three characters specifies the language of catalogue into which the access point in the field is designed to fit; the second group of three characters specifies the language of the base access point. The language codes are listed in the ISO 639-2 standard, and in Appendix A of the *UNIMARC Manual: Bibliographic Format*.

Because the definitions of the codes in subfield \$8 are dependent on the character position in which they occur, the coding of any character position mandates that each character position contains a code or a fill character (|).

Fixed Length Data Elements

The following data elements are defined for subfield \$8:

	Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Positions
	Language of cataloguing	3	0-2
	Language of the base access point	3	3-5
0-2	Language of Cataloguing		
	A three character code representing the language used in cataloguing. The language codes are listed in the ISO 639-2 standard and in Appendix A of the <i>UNIMARC Manual: Bibliographic Format</i> . In field 2--, the content of \$8/0-2 will always match the content of 100/9-11.		
3-5	Language of the Base Access Point		
	A three character code representing the language used in the base access point. The language codes are listed in the ISO 639-2 standard and in Appendix A of the <i>UNIMARC Manual: Bibliographic Format</i> .		

Examples**EX 1**

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
101 ##\$afre\$aeng
210 01\$8frefre\$aCanada\$bGroupe de travail du Ministre sur la protection des enfants en
cas d'accidents de véhicules automobiles
710 01\$8engeng\$aCanada\$bMinister's Task Force on Crash Protection for Infant and
Child Passengers in Motor Vehicles

EX 2

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
101 ##\$afre\$aeng\$aawl
102 ##\$aZZ
230 ##\$aAmi et Amile
730 ##\$8engeng\$aAmis and Amiloun
730 ##\$8welwel\$aAmlyn ac Amig

Works pertaining to the French, English and Welsh literatures (cf IFLA *Anonymous Classics*).

EX 3

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey50#####ba0
101 ##\$agrc
102 ##\$aZZ
230 ##\$7ba0yba0a\$8fregrc\$aPentekostárion
230 ##\$7ba0yga0y\$8fregrc\$aΠεντεχοστάριον
430 ##\$7ba0yba0y\$8frefre\$aPentecostaire
730 ##\$7ca0yca0y\$8rusrus\$aЦветная триодъ

Liturgical work of the Byzantine rite It exists in Greek and Russian versions.

EX 4

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
101 ##\$aspa
102 ##\$aXX
200 #1\$8frefre\$aColomb\$bChristophe
700 #1\$8frespa\$aColón\$bCristóbal

EX 5

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDafrey0103####ba0
101 ##\$alat\$agrc
102 ##\$aXX
200 #0\$8frefre\$aMarc Aurèle\$scempereur romain
400 #0\$8frelat\$aMarcus Aurelius Antoninus\$scempereur romain
700 #0\$8englat\$aMarcus Aurelius\$scEmperor of Rome\$f121-180

EX 6

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDahrvy0103####ba0
101 ##\$apol\$alat\$aaita\$aahrv
102 ##\$aPL\$aVA
200 #0\$8hrvlat\$aIohannes Paulus\$dII\$cpapa
700 #0\$8frefre\$aJean-Paul\$dII\$cpape
700 #0\$8engeng\$aJohn-Paul\$dII\$cpope

EX 7

100 ##\$aYYYYMMDDaengy0103####ba0

101 ##\$ager

210 01\$8engmul\$aGermany.\$bAbwehr

410 02\$8engger\$aAbwehr

2-- AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT BLOCK

Definition and Scope of Fields

This block contains the access point for which the record is made. The access point will be an authorized access point if the record is an authority record, and a variant access point if the record is a reference entry or general explanatory entry record. The following fields are defined:

- 200 Authorized Access Point – Personal Name
- 210 Authorized Access Point – Corporate Body Name
- 215 Authorized Access Point – Territorial or Geographical Name
- 216 Authorized Access Point – Trademark
- 217 Authorized Access Point – Printer/Publisher Device
- 220 Authorized Access Point – Family Name

- 230 Authorized Access Point – Title
- 235 Authorized Access Point – Collective Title
- 240 Authorized Access Point – Name/Title
- 243 Authorized Access Point – Conventional Name/Title for Legal and Religious Texts
- 245 Authorized Access Point – Name/Collective Title

- 250 Authorized Access Point – Topical Subject
- 260 Authorized Access Point – Place and Date of Publication, Performance, Provenance, etc.
- 280 Authorized Access Point – Form, Genre or Physical Characteristics

Occurrence

An authority record must contain one field from the 2-- block. The 2-- fields may be repeated for versions of the 2-- authorized access point in different scripts. If, however, the alternative script form links to a separate record that contains the alternative form as the 2-- authorized access point with appropriate variant and related access points and notes in that script, then the alternative script form should be carried in a 7-- authorized access point in other language and/or script field.

Notes on Field Contents

The relator subfield \$4 is included in the name fields for its infrequent use with name/title access points. The relator codes used are listed in Appendix C of the *UNIMARC Manual: Bibliographic Format*.

Since some of the control subfields \$0, \$1, \$2, \$3, \$5, \$6, \$7, and \$8 are not valid in some blocks, the introductory paragraphs for the block indicate which control subfields can be used.

Only the following control subfield may be used in the 2-- fields:

- \$1 Linking Data
- \$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point
- \$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

The use of the control subfields is described in a special section immediately preceding the 2-- AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT BLOCK description.

200 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME

Field Definition

This field contains a personal name access point.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable for alternative script forms.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)

Indicator 2 specifies the way the name is entered:
0 Name entered under forename or direct order
1 Name entered under surname

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a Entry element

The portion of the name used as the entry element in the access point; that part of the name by which the name is entered in ordered lists. This subfield must be present when the field is present. Not repeatable.

\$b Part of name other than entry element

The remainder of the name, used when the entry element is a surname or family name (EX 1, 3, 4). It contains forenames and other given names. The form of name indicator should be set to 1 when this subfield is used. Printing expansions of initials should be entered in \$g. Not repeatable.

\$c Additions to names other than dates

Any additions to names (other than dates) which do not form an integral part of the name itself including titles, epithets or indications of office (EX 2). Repeatable for second or subsequent occurrences of such additions (EX 5, 6).

\$d Roman numerals

Roman numerals associated with names of certain popes, royalty and ecclesiastics (EX 2). If an epithet (or a further forename) is associated with the numeration, this too should be included (EX 7). The form of name indicator should be set to 0 when this subfield is used. Not repeatable.

\$f Dates

The dates attached to personal names together with abbreviations or other indications of the nature of the dates. Any indications of the type of date (e.g., flourished, born, died) should be entered in the subfield in full or abbreviated form (EX 1-4, 8). All the dates for the person named in the field should be entered in \$f. Not repeatable.

\$g Expansion of initials of forename

The full form of forenames when initials are recorded in subfield \$b as the preferred form and when both initials and the full form are required (EX 4). Not repeatable.

\$4 Relator code

The code used to designate the relationship between the person named in the field and the bibliographic item to which the record refers. This subfield is primarily intended for use in bibliographic records. The list of codes is to be found in *UNIMARC Manual: Bibliographic Format* Appendix C. Repeatable.

\$j Form subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material (EX 9). Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic the subject access point represents (EX 10-12). Repeatable.

\$y Geographical subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a person which the subject access point represents (EX 11). Repeatable.

\$z Chronological subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a person whom the subject access point represents (EX 12). Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$7 Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point.

See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point

See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The field contains the preferred form of a personal name formulated in accordance with the descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

The subfields forming the base access point that identify the personal name are \$a, \$b, \$d and \$g. Qualifying data are recorded in \$c and \$f.

Related Fields

400 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME

500 RELATED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME

700 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – PERSONAL NAME

Examples

EX 1

200 #1\$aHorne,\$bDonald,\$f1921-

EX 2

200 #0\$aAlexander\$dI,\$cEmperor of Russia,\$f1771-1825

EX 3

200 #1\$aRiano y Montero,\$bJuan Facundo,\$f1828-1901

EX 4

200 #1\$aTolkien,\$bJ. R. R.\$g(John Ronald Reuel),\$f1892-1973

EX 5

200 #1\$aArundel,\$bPhilip Howard,\$cSaint\$cEarl of

EX 6

200 #0\$aAlexandra,\$cEmpress,\$cConsort of Nicholas II, Emperor of Russia

EX 7

200 #0\$aJohn\$dII Comnenus,\$cEmperor of the East

EX 8

200 #0\$aJoannes,\$cDiaconus,\$ffl.1226-1240

EX 9

200 #1\$aShakespeare\$bWilliam\$f1564-1616\$jQuotations

EX 10

200 #0\$aJesus Christ\$xNativity

EX 11

200 #1\$aEinstein\$bAlbert\$f1879-1955\$xHomes and haunts\$yGermany\$yBerlin

EX 12

200 #1\$aShakespeare\$bWilliam\$f1564-1616\$xCriticism and
interpretation\$xHistory\$z18th Century

EX 13

200 #1\$aЛермонтов\$bМ. Ю.\$gМихаил Юрьевич\$f1814-1841

EX 14

200 #1\$aПутин\$bВ. В.\$gВладимир Владимирович\$f1952 – \$xВизиты\$yЧувашская
Республика\$z2004

EX 15

200 #0\$aВильгельм\$dI Молчаливый\$спринц Оранский\$f1533 – 1584

210 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME

Field Definition

This field contains a corporate or meeting name access point. Territorial names followed by a corporate body subdivision are considered corporate body names (field 210); territorial names alone or only with subject subdivisions as additions are considered territorial names (field 215).

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable for alternative script forms.

Indicators

Indicator 1 specifies the type of corporate body:
The first indicator specifies whether the corporate body is a meeting or not. Meetings include conferences, symposia, etc. If the name of the meeting is a subdivision of the name of a corporate body, the name is regarded as that of a corporate body (EX 4).

- 0 Corporate name
- 1 Meeting

If the source format does not distinguish meeting names from other corporate names, the indicator position should contain the fill character.

Indicator 2 specifies the way the name is entered:
0 Name in inverted form
1 Name entered under place or jurisdiction
2 Name entered under name in direct order

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a Entry element

The portion of the name used as the entry element in the access point; that part of the name by which the name is entered in ordered lists; i.e., the part of the name up to the first filing boundary. This subfield is not repeatable but must be present if the field is present.

\$b Subdivision

The name of a lower level in a hierarchy when the name includes a hierarchy (EX 1, 4); or the name of the corporate body when it is entered under place (EX 2, 8). This subfield excludes additions to the name added by the cataloguer to distinguish it from other institutions of the same name (see \$c, \$g, \$h). Repeatable if there is more than one lower level in the hierarchy.

\$c Addition to name or qualifier

Any addition to the name of the corporate body added by the cataloguer, other than number, place and date of conference (EX 3, 4). Repeatable.

- \$d** Number of meeting and/or number of part of meeting
The number of a meeting when the meeting belongs to a numbered series (EX 4). Not repeatable.
- \$e** Location of meeting
The place where a meeting was held when it is required as part of the access point (EX 4, 5). Not repeatable.
- \$f** Date of meeting
The date of a meeting when it is required as part of the access point (EX 4, 5). Not repeatable.
- \$g** Inverted element
Any part of the name of the corporate body which is removed from the beginning of the name in order to enter the body under a word which is more likely to be sought. Not repeatable. This subfield is more commonly used in variant access points. (See EX 5 under Field 410.)
- \$h** Part of name other than entry element and inverted element
In a access point with an inverted element, the part of the name following the inversion. Not repeatable.
- \$4** Relator code
The code used to designate the relationship between the corporate body named in the field and the bibliographic item to which the record refers. This subfield is primarily intended for use in bibliographic records. The list of codes is to be found in *UNIMARC Manual: Bibliographic Format* Appendix C. Repeatable.
- \$j** Form subdivision
A term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material (EX 6). Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead (EX 5). Repeatable.
- \$x** Topical subdivision
A term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic the subject access point represents (EX 5, 7, 8). Repeatable.
- \$y** Geographical subdivision
A term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a corporate body which the subject access point represents (EX 7). Repeatable.
- \$z** Chronological subdivision
A term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a corporate body which the subject access point represents (EX 8). Repeatable.

Control Subfields

- \$7 Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point.
See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.
- \$8 Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point
See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The field contains the preferred form of a corporate body name formulated in accordance with the descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

The subfields forming the base access point that identify the corporate name are \$a, \$b, \$h and \$g. Qualifying data are recorded in \$c, \$d, \$e and \$f.

Related Fields

- 150 CODED DATA FIELD: CORPORATE NAME
410 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME
510 RELATED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME
710 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT –
CORPORATE BODY NAME

Examples

- EX 1
210 02\$aBrunel University.\$bEducation Liaison Centre
- EX 2
210 01\$aOntario.\$bOffice of Arbitration
- EX 3
210 02\$aPomorski muzej\$c(Kotor)
- EX 4
210 02\$aLabour Party\$c(Great Britain).\$bConference\$d(72nd ;\$f1972 ;\$eBlackpool, Lancashire)
- EX 5
210 12\$aNorth Carolina Conference on Water Conservation\$f(1975 ;\$eRaleigh)\$xPeriodicals
- EX 6
210 02\$aChurch of England.\$xClergy.\$jBiography
- EX 7
210 02\$aCatholic Church\$yScotland\$xGovernment
- EX 8
210 01\$aUnited States\$bArmy\$xRecruiting, enlistment, etc.\$zCivil War, 1861-1865
- EX 9
210 01\$aРоссия\$c1917, февраль – октябрь\$bМинистерство продовольствия

EX 10

210 01\$aРоссийская Федерация\$bГосударственная Дума\$c2003-

EX 11

210 02\$aИнститут археологии\$cМосква

EX 12

210 12\$aМеждународная научная конференция на тему "Государства Центральной Азии: поиск места в мировой политике"\$f1994\$cМосква

EX 13

210 02\$aСтрогановское центральное художественно-промышленное училище\$cМосква

EX 14

210 10\$aБут,\$gНиколай Яковлевич,\$hВыставка произведений "Выполняя интернациональный долг. Афганские зарисовки"\$f1985\$cМосква

EX 15

210 02\$a≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠Курск≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠, атомная подводная лодка\$xАвария\$xЭкологические последствия

EX 16

210 02\$aМузей изящных искусств\$cТолидо, город (Огайо, штат; США)\$xКоллекция графики\$xВыставки\$z2005 – 2006

EX 17

Record 1: record from the Russian national authority file of corporate names

152 ##\$aRCR

210 01\$aГермания\$bВерховное главнокомандование вооруженными силами\$bУправление разведки и контрразведки

Record 2: record from the Russian national authority file of subject access points

152 ##\$bnlr_sh

210 02\$aАбвер

The example shows access points for the same corporate body formulated in accordance with descriptive cataloguing rules and subject system in use.

215 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME

Field Definition

This field contains a territorial or geographical name access point. Territorial names alone or only with subject subdivisions as additions are considered territorial names (field 215); territorial names followed by a corporate body subdivision are considered corporate body names (field 210).

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable for alternative script forms.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)

Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a Entry element

The portion of the name used as the entry element in the access point; that part of the name by which the name is entered in ordered lists. This subfield must be present when the field is present. Not repeatable.

\$j Form subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material (EX 5). Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead (EX 2). Repeatable.

\$x Topical subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic the subject access point represents (EX 1, 3). Repeatable.

\$y Geographical subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to the territory or geographical name that the subject access point represents (EX 6). Repeatable.

\$z Chronological subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a territory or geographical name that the subject access point represents (EX 3). Repeatable.

Control Subfields

- \$7 Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point
See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.
- \$8 Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point
See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The field contains the preferred form of a territorial or geographic name, formulated in accordance with the descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

Related Fields

- 415 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHIC NAME
515 RELATED ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHIC NAME
715 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT –
TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHIC NAME

Examples

- EX 1
215 ##\$aUnited States\$xHistory
- EX 2
215 ##\$aOntario\$xGuidebooks
- EX 3
215 ##\$aOntario\$xHistory\$z1801-1900
- EX 4
215 ##\$aRocky Mountains
- EX 5
215 ##\$aParis (Texas)\$jGuidebooks
- EX 6
215 ##\$aUnited States\$xBoundaries\$yCanada
- EX 7
215 ##\$aПа-де-Кале, пролив
- EX 8
215 ##\$aМарс, планета\$xГеология
- EX 9
215 ##\$aЕгипет Древний\$xИстория

216 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TRADEMARK

Field Definition

This field contains a trademark name access point.

A trademark or "mark" is a distinctive word, phrase, logo, design, or any other device that can be represented graphically, used by a business or company to identify its products or services and distinguish them from the products and services made, sold or provided by others. Some examples are: *Levi's* (trademark of Levi Strauss & Co.), *Pentium* (trademark of Intel Corporation), *Decca* (trademark of Decca Record Company).

Under the common term trademark other specific categories of marks such as service marks, trade dress, collective marks, etc., can be found. The trade name of a business can function as a mark as well. For instance Sony Music Entertainment Inc. uses its trade name *Sony Music* as a trademark on its line of sound recordings (see 516).

As far as sound recordings are concerned, the trademark, commonly known as the "label", together with the label number uniquely identifies each commercial recording (see *UNIMARC Manual: Bibliographic Format*, field 071).

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable for alternative script forms.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)
Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a Data element

The name of the trademark in access point form. Mandatory. Not repeatable.

\$f Dates

The dates between which a particular trademark was in use, when they are required as part of the access point, for example, as qualifiers. Not repeatable.

\$c Qualification

Any addition to the name of the trademark added by the cataloguer, other than dates (EX 3, 4). Repeatable.

\$j Form subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material. Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic the access point represents. Repeatable.

\$y Geographical subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a trademark which the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

\$z Chronological subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a trademark which the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$7 Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point

See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point

See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The field contains the preferred form of a trademark formulated in accordance with the descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

The subfield forming the base access point that identifies the trademark name is \$a. Qualifying data are recorded in \$c and \$f.

Related Fields

416 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TRADEMARK

510 RELATED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME

516 RELATED ACCESS POINT – TRADEMARK

716 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT –
TRADEMARK

Examples

EX1

216 ##\$aKitekat

EX 2

216 ##\$aErato\$cmarque phonographique

EX 3

216 ##\$aDanone\$cmarque

EX 4

216 ##\$7ba0yba0a\$8frerus\$aMelodiâ\$cmarque russe

216 ##\$7ba0yca0y\$8frerus\$aМелодия

416 ##\$7ba0yba0e\$8frerus\$aMelodiya

The first field 216 contains the transliterated form using the ISO transliteration scheme. The qualifier is necessary to distinguish the name of the Russian trademark from an otherwise identical New-Caledonian trademark. The second field 216 contains the Cyrillic. The variant form, in 416, appears on the products edited in France and follows no identified transliteration table.

217 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PRINTER/PUBLISHER DEVICE

Field Definition

This field contains a printer/publisher device access point.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable for alternative script forms.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)

Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a Printer/publisher device description

Description of the figurative elements of the device. Not repeatable.

\$b Motto. Repeatable.

\$c Standard citation

Citation which identifies unambiguously a device. Repeatable.

\$d Size

Size, in centimetres, of a device. Not repeatable.

\$f Date

The dates of a printer/publisher when they are required as part of the access point. Not repeatable.

\$g Iconographic term

Term relating to the main iconographic elements present in the device. Repeatable.

\$j Form subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material. Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic the access point represents. Repeatable.

\$y Geographical subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a printer/published device which the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

\$z Chronological subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a printed/publisher device which the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$7 Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point

See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point

See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Each device should be characterized by one or more standard citations which identify it unambiguously. The standard citation identifies the figure of the device within pre-established bibliographic sources and consists of an alphabetic character identifying the repertory, and of numerical characters identifying the device within the repertory (number of the figure), e.g., Z534 (Z = Zappella; 534 = number of the device in the repertory). A device may have several standard citations because it may be present in one or more sources.

Partial list of device sources for printer/publisher device of XVI century:

- A** Ascarelli, F. *La tipografia cinquecentina italiana*. Firenze: Sansoni Antiquariato, 1953.
- T** Ascarelli, F.; M. Menato. *La tipografia del '500 in Italia*. Firenze: L.S. Olschki, 1989.
- Q** Ascarelli, F.; E. Vaccaro. *Marche poco note di tipografi editori italiani del sec. XVI dalla raccolta della biblioteca universitaria Alessandrina* in "Miscellanea di studi in memoria di Anna Saitta Revignas". Firenze: L.S. Olschki, 1978, p. 29-52.
- K** Kristeller, P. *Die italienischen Buchdrucker- und Verlegerzeichen bis 1525*. Strassburg: J.H. Ed. Heitz, 1893 (ripr. facs.: Naarden, A.W. Van Bekhoven, 1969).
- V** Vaccaro, E. *Le marche dei tipografi ed editori del secolo XVI nella Biblioteca Angelica*. Firenze: L.S. Olschki, 1983.
- Z** Zappella, G. *Le marche dei tipografi e degli editori italiani del Cinquecento*. Milano: Editrice Bibliografica, 1986.

The subfield forming the base access point that identifies the printer/publisher device is \$b. Qualifying/descriptive data are recorded in \$a, \$c, \$d and \$f.

Related Fields

- 517 RELATED ACCESS POINT – PRINTER /PUBLISHER DEVICE
- 510 RELATED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME

Examples

EX 1

152 ##\$aGuida SBN. Libro antico

217 ##\$aTartaruga che tiene sul guscio una vela con giglio fiorentino. In cornice figurata\$bFestina lente\$cZ11524\$d40 x 48 mm\$f1574–1599\$gTartaruga\$gVela\$gGiglio

510 00\$3IT\ICCU\CNCT\CNCT000160\$aSermartelli,\$gBartolomeo\$c<1>
 510 00\$3IT\ICCU\CNCT\CNCT000045\$aSermartelli,\$gMichelangelo
 801 #3 \$aIT\$bICCU\$c20070102
 810 ##\$aZappella, Giuseppina, Le marche dei tipografi e degli editori italiani del cinque-
 cento
 810 ##\$aEDIT16\$uhttp://edit16.iccu.sbn.it
 856 4# \$uhttp://edit16.iccu.sbn.it/scripts/iccu_ext.dll?fn=63&i=84

220 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME

Field Definition

This field contains a family name access point.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable for alternative script forms.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)

Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a Entry element

The family name in access point form. Mandatory. Not repeatable.

\$c Type of family

A categorization or generic descriptor for the type of family. Includes categorizations such as clan, dynasty, family unit, patriarchy, matriarchy, etc. Not repeatable.

\$d Places associated with the family

Information pertaining to places where the family resides or resided or had some connection. Repeatable.

\$f Dates

The dates of a family when they are required as part of the access point (EX 3). Not repeatable.

\$4 Relator code

The code used to designate the relationship between the family named in the field and the bibliographic item to which the record refers. This subfield is primarily intended for use in bibliographic records. The list of codes is to be found in *The UNIMARC Manual: Bibliographic Format*, Appendix C. Repeatable.

\$j Form subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material. Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic the subject access point represents (EX 2). Repeatable.

\$y Geographical subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a family which the subject access point represents (EX 2). Repeatable.

\$z Chronological subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a family which the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$7 Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point

See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point

See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The field contains the preferred form of a family name formulated in accordance with the descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

The subfield forming the base access point that identifies the family name is \$a. Qualifying data are recorded in \$c, \$d and \$f.

Related Fields

420 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME

520 RELATED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME

720 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT –
FAMILY NAME

Examples

EX 1

220 ##\$aDuecker\$cFamily

EX 2

220 ##\$aBuchanan\$cClan\$xHistory\$yScotland

EX 3

220 ##\$aPahlavi\$cDynasty\$f1925-1979

EX 4

220 ##\$aРамессиды\$cдинастия\$f1206 – ок.1070 до н.э.

EX 5

220 ##\$aКуттер\$cсемья фотографов\$xВыставки\$yЛюксембург, г.\$z1999

230 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE

Field Definition

This field contains a title access point. A title access point is intended to bring together the records for issues of a work that has been published under different titles or items in series.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable for alternative script forms.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)
Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a Entry element

The title by which the work is known without any qualifications or mention of any part. This subfield should be present whenever field 230 is used. Mandatory. Not repeatable.

\$b General material designation

Text of general material designation. Repeatable.

\$h Number of section or part

The number of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title (EX 10). Repeatable for a subdivided part (EX 11).

\$i Name of section or part

The name of a part when the item to which the title is being applied is only a part of the work named in the title (EX 11). Repeatable for a subdivided part .

\$k Date of publication

The date of publication of the item when it is added to the title. Not repeatable.

\$l Form subdivision

Standard phrase added to an access point to further specify the title (EX 1). Not repeatable.

\$m Language

The language of the item, when required as part of the title (EX 1, 5, 10). Not repeatable. If the work is in more than one language, both languages should be entered in a single subfield \$m (EX 13).

- \$n** Miscellaneous information
Any information not provided for in any other subfield. Repeatable.
- \$q** Version (or date of version)
An identification of the version of the work represented by the item; this may be the name or the original date of the version (EX 1). Not repeatable.
- \$r** Medium of performance (for music)
The instrumentation, etc., of the item (EX 12). Repeatable.
- \$s** Numeric designation (for music)
A number assigned by the composer or others to distinguish works. The number may be the serial, opus (EX 12) or thematic index number or date used as a number. Repeatable.
- \$u** Key (for music)
The musical key used as part of the title (EX 12). Not repeatable.
- \$w** Arranged statement (for music)
The statement that a musical work is an arrangement (EX 2). Not repeatable.
- \$j** Form subdivision
A term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material (EX 3). Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.
- \$x** Topical subdivision
A term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents (EX 3, 6). Repeatable.
- \$y** Geographical subdivision
A term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a title which the subject access point represents (EX 6). Repeatable.
- \$z** Chronological subdivision
A term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a title which the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

Control Subfields

- \$7** Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point
See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.
- \$8** Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point
See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The field contains the preferred form of a title formulated in accordance with the descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

The subfields forming the base access point that identify the title are \$a, \$i and \$h. Qualifying data are recorded in subfields from \$b to \$w.

Related Fields

430 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TITLE

530 RELATED ACCESS POINT – TITLE

730 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT –
TITLE

Examples

EX 1

230 ##\$aBible.\$mEnglish.\$qAuthorized.\$lSelections

EX 2

230 ##\$aGod save the King;\$warr.

EX 3

230 ##\$aBeowulf\$xLanguage\$jGlossaries, etc.

EX 4

230 ##\$aCrónica de los Reyes de Castilla

EX 5

230 ##\$aJuliana\$mMiddle English

EX 6

230 ##\$aCoran\$xAppréciation\$yEurope

EX 7

154 ##\$aa

230 ##\$aCBMS regional conference series in mathematics

EX 8

154 ##\$ab

230 ##\$aCambridge history of Iran

EX 9

154 ##\$ac

230 ##\$aViking books

EX 10

230 ##\$aIliad.\$hBook 24.\$mEnglish

EX 11

230 ##\$aPièces de viole.\$h4e livre.\$h23e partie.\$iArabesque

EX 12

230 ##\$aConcertos\$roboes(2), string orchestra\$sop.9, no.3\$uF major

EX 13

230 ##\$a≠NSB≠Le ≠NSE≠malade imaginaire.\$mEnglish & French

Note the use of control functional NSB/NSE to indicate non-filing characters. See *UNIMARC Man*

EX 14

230 ##\$aБиблия\$iВетхий Завет\$iПсалтирь\$нпер. с евр.

EX 15

230 ##\$aБазилики\$lсборник законов

EX 16

230 ##\$a≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠Повесть временных лет≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠\$lлетописный
свод\$xИсследование текста

235 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – COLLECTIVE TITLE

Field Definition

This field contains a collective title access point. A collective title access point is intended to bring together the records for various works by prolific authors.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable for alternative script forms.

Indicators

- Indicator 1 specifies the type of collective title:
- 0 Complete collected works
 - 1 Selected works, i.e., a collection of individual items by an author, but not the entirety of his work
 - 2 Selections, i.e., parts of the works of an author, including extracts from works
- Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

Data Subfields

- \$a** Collective title
The main term used to bring together works of one kind. Mandatory. Not repeatable.
- \$b** General material designation
Text of general material designation. Repeatable.
- \$e** Collective subtitle
A subsequent term or terms used to subdivide the collective title. Not repeatable.
- \$k** Date of publication
The date of the item when added to a collective title to further subdivide a collection. Not repeatable.
- \$m** Language
The language of the item when required as part of the authorized access point in order to group together items in the same language. Not repeatable.
- \$r** Medium of performance (for music)
The instrumentation, etc., of the item. Repeatable.
- \$s** Numeric designation (for music)
A number assigned by the composer or others to distinguish works. The number may be the serial, opus or thematic index number or date used as a number. Repeatable.

- \$u** Key (for music)
The musical key used as part of the title. Not repeatable.
- \$w** Arranged statement (for music)
The statement that a musical work is an arrangement. Not repeatable.
- \$j** Form subdivision
A term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material. Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.
- \$x** Topical subdivision
A term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents. Repeatable.
- \$y** Geographical subdivision
A term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to the collective title which the subject access point represents. Repeatable.
- \$z** Chronological subdivision
A term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to the collective title that the access point represents. Repeatable.

Control Subfields

- \$7** Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point
See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.
- \$8** Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point
See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field is only used embedded in a -45 NAME/COLLECTIVE TITLE fields.

The subfields forming the base access point that identify the collective preferred title are \$a and \$e. Qualifying data are recorded in subfields from \$b to \$w.

Related Fields

- 245 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/COLLECTIVE TITLE
445 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – NAME/COLLECTIVE TITLE
545 RELATED ACCESS POINT – NAME/COLLECTIVE TITLE
745 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT –
NAME/COLLECTIVE TITLE

Examples

See field 245.

240 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE

Field Definition

This field contains a name/title access point. A name/title access point is intended to bring together the records for various issues of a work or items in series.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable for alternative script forms.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)
Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

A) Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique

Data Subfields

\$1 Linking data

Contains the tag and indicator values of the embedded fields, without spacing or punctuation. Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$7 Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point

See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point

See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Each element is coded according to the 2-- field appropriate to the element: 200 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME, 210 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME, 215 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME, or 220 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME for the name; and a 230 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE for the title. The tag, indicators, and data subfields for the name and title are embedded in a field 240, with each preceded by subfield identifier \$1.

When control subfields are needed, they should precede the first \$1 subfields containing embedded data.

A more detailed description of embedded fields is contained in the *UNIMARC Manual: Bibliographic Format* under the 4-- field block.

B) Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique

Data Subfields

\$a Name

The name of the person, corporate body or family with primary intellectual responsibility for the item registered in subfield \$t. When subfield \$a is a composite of more than one standard subfield use ISBD punctuation to separate the elements (EX 3). Not repeatable.

\$t Title

The title by which the work is known. When subfield \$t is a composite of more than one standard subfield use ISBD punctuation to separate the elements (EX 3). Not repeatable.

\$j Form subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material. Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents. Repeatable.

\$y Geographical subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to the name/ title which the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

\$z Chronological subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to the name/title that the access point represents. Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$7 Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point

See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point

See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.

Related Fields

440 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE

540 RELATED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE

740 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT –
NAME/TITLE

Examples

EX 1

240 ##\$1215##\$aFrance.\$1230##\$aBulletin officiel du registre du commerce

EX 2

240 ##\$1200#1\$aShakespeare,\$bWilliam,\$f1564-1616.\$1230##\$aHamlet\$jBibliographies

Examples 1 & 2 illustrate the embedded fields technique.

EX 3

240 ##\$aMozart, Wolfgang Amadeus (1756-1791)\$tDon Giovanni. KV527 (Prague)

Example 3 illustrates the standard subfields technique.

EX 4

240 ##\$1200#1\$aРолинг\$бД. К.\$gДжоан Кэтлин\$f1965 –
\$1230##\$a≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠Гарри Поттер и философский
камень≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠\$xСюжет\$xИспользование для компьютерной игры

EX 5

240 ##\$1200#1\$aМусоргский\$gМодест Петрович\$bМ. П.\$f1839 –
1881\$1230##\$a≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠Борис Годунов≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠\$lопера

See also Example under field 540 for use of control subfields in an embedded field.

243 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS

Field Definition

This field contains the authorized access points for a conventional name/title for legal and religious texts of a prescriptive nature and for treaties and other agreements between two or more parties, issued under a given jurisdiction, usually a country, or a church. Conventional name/title access points for legal and religious texts are usually formed by the name of the jurisdiction or church and a conventional title. The access points for treaties are usually formed by the name of the jurisdiction of the first party, followed by a conventional title and the name of the jurisdiction of the other party. They can also be formed just by a commonly recognized conventional title.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable.

Indicators

- Indicator 1 blank (not defined)
Indicator 2 specifies the form of conventional name:
- 1 Name entered under country or other geographical name
Used for jurisdictional geographical names.
 - 2 Name entered under other form
Used for church names.

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a Entry Element

The entry element of the name of jurisdiction under which the laws and other legislation, or the treaty or other agreement, are issued. This subfield must be present if the field is present. Not repeatable.

\$b Subdivision

The name of a lower level in the hierarchy of the jurisdiction under which the laws and other legislation, or the treaty or other agreement, are issued, when the name includes a hierarchy. Repeatable if there is more than one lower level in the hierarchy.

\$c Addition to Name or Qualifier

Any addition to the name of the jurisdiction under which the laws and other legislation or the treaty or other agreement are issued, added by the cataloguer to distinguish from homonym jurisdictions. Repeatable.

\$e Name of the other party

The name of jurisdiction of other party(ies) under which the treaty or other agreement between two or more parts is issued (EX 4, 5). If necessary, subfield \$b for a lower level

in the hierarchy of the jurisdiction, and/or \$c to distinguish from homonym jurisdictions, could be used. Not repeatable.

\$f Date of legal issue or version, or date of signing

The date of legal issue or version when added to the authorized conventional name access point (EX 2, 3). The year, earlier year or earliest year of signing of the treaty, convention or protocols when added to the authorized conventional name access point (EX 4, 5). Repeatable (EX 5).

\$i Name of section or part

The name of a part when the item to which the authorized conventional name access point is being applied is only a part of the text named in the access point (EX 2). Repeatable for a subdivided part (EX 3).

\$l Form subheading

Standard phrase added to a access point to further specify the authorized conventional name access point (EX 5). Repeatable.

\$n Miscellaneous information

Any information not provided for in any other subfield. Repeatable.

\$t Conventional title

Authorized form of a conventional title for the text being catalogued. The term(s) of the title may include specifications by date or version of given types. Not repeatable (EX 5).

\$j Form subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material. Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents. Repeatable.

\$y Geographical subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to the conventional name access point which the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

\$z Chronological subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to the conventional name access point that the access point represents. Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$7 Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point

See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point

See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The field contains the preferred form of a conventional name/title formulated in accordance with the cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

The subfields forming the base access point that identify the conventional name/title for legal and religious texts are \$a, \$b, \$e and \$i. Qualifying data are recorded in \$c, \$f, \$l, \$n and \$t.

Related Fields

- 443 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS
- 543 RELATED ACCESS POINT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS
- 743 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS

Examples

EX 1

243 #1\$aPortugal\$tLeis, decretos, etc.

EX 2

243 #1\$aPortugal\$tLeis, decretos, etc.\$iCódigo de processo penal,\$f1987

EX 3

243 #2\$aCatholic Church\$tLiturgy\$iMissale\$iKyriale

EX 4

243 #1\$aPortugal.\$tTratados, etc.\$eRússia,\$f1798

543 #1\$aRússia.\$tTratados, etc.\$ePortugal,\$f1798

EX 5

243 #2\$aIgreja Católica\$tTratados, etc.\$ePortugal\$f1778

543 #1\$aPortugal\$tTratados, etc.\$eIgreja Católica\$f1778

245 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/COLLECTIVE TITLE

Field Definition

This field contains a name/collective title access point. A name/collective title access point is intended to bring together records for various works by prolific authors.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable for alternative script forms.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)
Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

A) Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique

Data Subfields

\$1 Linking data

Contains the tag and indicator values of the embedded fields, without spacing or punctuation. Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$7 Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point

See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point

See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Each element is coded according to the 2-- field appropriate to the element: 200 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME, 210 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME, 215 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME, or 220 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME for the name; and a 235 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – COLLECTIVE TITLE for the collective title. The tag, indicators, and data subfields for the name and title of these are embedded in a field 245, with each preceded by subfield identifier \$1.

When control subfields may be needed, they should precede the first \$1 subfields containing embedded data.

B) Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique

Data Subfields

\$a Name

The name of the person, corporate body or family with primary intellectual responsibility for the item registered in subfield \$t. When subfield \$a is a composite of more than one standard subfield use ISBD punctuation to separate the elements (EX 3). Not repeatable.

\$t Collective title

When subfield \$t is a composite of more than one standard subfield use ISBN punctuation to separate the elements (EX 3). Not repeatable.

\$j Form subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material. Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead. Repeatable.

\$x Topical subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify further the topic that the access point represents. Repeatable.

\$y Geographical subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to the name/collective title which the subject access point represents. Repeatable.

\$z Chronological subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to the name/collective title that the access point represents. Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$7 Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point

See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.

\$8 Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point

See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.

Related Fields

445 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – NAME/COLLECTIVE TITLE

545 RELATED ACCESS POINT – NAME/COLLECTIVE TITLE

745 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT –
NAME/COLLECTIVE TITLE

Examples

EX 1

245 ##\$1200#1\$aShakespeare,\$bWilliam,\$f1564-1616.\$12350#\$aWorks.\$mRussian

EX 2

245 ##\$1200#1\$aWilde,\$bOscar.\$12352#\$aPlays.\$eSelections

EX 3

245 ##\$aWilde, Oscar\$tPlays. Selections

EX 4

245 ##\$1200#1\$aШекспир\$bВ.\$gВильям\$f1564-1616\$12351#\$aИзбранные
сочинения\$k1938

EX 5

245 ##\$1200#1\$aБах\$bИ. С.\$gИоганн Себастьян\$f1685 – 1750\$12350#\$aВокальные
произведения

EX 6

245 ##\$1200#1\$aТерехина\$bЛ. И.\$gЛидия Ивановна\$f1950\$12350#\$aПоэзия\$xЯзык
и стиль

250 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL SUBJECT

Field Definition

This field contains a topical subject access point or a subject category in coded and/or textual form.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable for alternative script form.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)
Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a Topical subject or subject category

The term in the form prescribed by the system of subject access points or subject categories used. Not repeatable.

\$n Subject category code

A coded representation of a subject category (EX 7). Repeatable.

\$m Subject category subdivision code

A coded representation of a subject category subdivision (EX 8). Repeatable.

\$j Form subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) or material (EX 4). Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead (EX 5). Repeatable.

\$x Topical subdivision or subject category subdivision text

A term added to a subject access point to further specify the topic the subject access point represents. (EX 2) or a term added to the subject category to specify a particular aspect of the subject category in the \$a subfield. Repeatable.

\$y Geographical subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a topic that the subject access point represents (EX 1). Repeatable.

\$z Chronological subdivision

A term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a topic that the subject access point represents (EX 3). Repeatable.

Control Subfields

- \$7 Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point
See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.
- \$8 Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point
See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The field contains the preferred form of a topical subject access point formulated in accordance with the subject system in use by the agency which creates it. It also contains the preferred form of a category formulated in accordance with the provisions of the system of subject categories used. It may contain the category in textual form, coded form, or both forms.

Related Fields

- 450 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL SUBJECT
550 RELATED ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL SUBJECT
750 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT –
TOPICAL SUBJECT

Examples

EX 1

250 ##\$aEducation\$yItaly

EX 2

250 ##\$aConstruction industry\$xLaw and legislation

EX 3

250 ##\$aArchitecture, Modern\$z19th century

EX 4

250 ##\$aBiology\$jPeriodicals

EX 5

250 ##\$aBiology\$xPeriodicals

Examples 4 and 5 illustrate alternative approaches to coding form; either explicitly using subfield \$j or as a topical subdivision, using subfield \$x.

EX 6

250 ##\$aBiology\$xPeriodicals\$xBibliography\$jUnion lists

EX 7

250 ##\$nK800

Subject category code recorded according to the AGRIS Thesaurus identified in 152 Rules subfield \$bagris.

EX 8

250 ##\$2mesh\$nZ1\$m.542.248.797

The MeSH notational equivalent of the subject access point for Slovakia.

EX 9

250 ##\$aМорская пехота\$xИстория\$yСоединенные Штаты Америки\$z1941 – 1945

EX 10

250 ##\$aТабасаранский язык

EX 11

250 ##\$aТаможенный контроль\$yРоссийская Федерация

EX 12

250 ##\$aПолитические партии\$xПрограммы\$yРоссийская Федерация

260 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION, PERFORMANCE, PROVENANCE, ETC.

Field Definition

This field contains, in access point form, a place of publication, production, etc. or a place and date of performance or recording, or provenance. The field may include the name of a country, state or province, county and/or city.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable for alternative script forms.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)

Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a Country (nation state). Not repeatable.

\$b State or province, etc.

First-order political jurisdiction below a country. Not repeatable.

\$c Intermediate political jurisdiction

Second-order or lower political jurisdiction, but not including cities, etc. Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.

\$d City, etc.

The name of a city, town, commune, village or other distinct populated area not defined as a subsection of a larger one (see \$k). Not repeatable.

\$e Venue

Named buildings, urban spaces, vehicles, etc. (EX 4-6, 8, 9). Repeatable.

\$f Date

Repeatable if more performance dates have to be recorded. The date must be standardized according to ISO 8601, and may include time and period formats (EX 4-9).

\$g Season. Not repeatable (EX 4).

\$h Occasion. Not repeatable (EX 6, 8, 9).

\$i Final date. Not repeatable (EX 9).

- \$k Subsection of city, etc.
Smaller unit within a populated place, e.g., boroughs, neighbourhoods, streets. Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest (EX 10).
- \$m Other geographical regions or features
Terrestrial non-jurisdictional geographic entities, e.g., oceans, islands, mountains, etc. Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.
- \$n Extraterrestrial areas
Any extraterrestrial entity or space, and the geographic features of such entities. Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest.
- \$o Geographical area
Larger area than country, such as world, hemisphere, continent. Repeatable when multiple levels are given, in order from highest to lowest. This subfield will normally appear first in any field where it is used (EX 10).

Control Subfields

- \$7 Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point
See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.
- \$8 Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point
See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.

Related Fields

- 460 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION, PERFORMANCE, PROVENANCE, ETC.
- 560 RELATED ACCESS POINT – PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION, PERFORMANCE, PROVENANCE, ETC.
- 760 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION, PERFORMANCE, PROVENANCE, ETC.

Notes on Field Contents

This field contains the preferred for a place and date of publication, etc. formulated in accordance with the rules in use by the agency which created it.

The subfields forming the base access point that identify the place name are \$d and \$k. Qualifying data are recorded in subfields from \$a to \$o.

Examples

EX 1
260 ##\$aUnited States\$bAlabama\$dMontgomery

EX 2
260 ##\$dRoma

EX 3

260 ##\$aUnited States\$bVirginia\$cPrince William County\$dHaymarket

EX 4

260 ##\$aItaly\$dMilano\$eTeatro Ducale\$f1794\$gAutunno

EX 5

260 ##\$dSydney\$eSydney Opera House\$eConcert hall\$f19990510

EX 6

260 ##\$aItaly\$bPuglia\$cLecce\$dSerrano\$ePiazza del Duomo\$f1970\$hFesta dell'Assunta

EX 7

260 ##\$aGreat Britain\$dLondon\$f2002

EX 8

260 ##\$aAT\$dVienna\$eHofburg Kapelle\$f17050410\$hVenerdi Santo

EX 9

260 ##\$aIT\$bBasilicata\$cMatera\$dScalzano ionico\$epiazza del comune\$f20031127
\$i20031128\$hinquinamento atomico

EX 10

260 ##\$oWorld\$oEurope\$aUnited Kingdom\$bEngland\$cGreater London\$dLondon \$kCity
of Westminster\$kWestminster

Complete hierarchy from *Getty Thesaurus of Geographic Names* for an item published in Westminster. The *Thesaurus* is recorded in 152 subfield \$btgn.

EX 11

260 ##\$nMoon\$nApennines

The Moon is entered in \$n as are any geographical subdivisions.

EX 12

260 ##\$eChallenger II

EX 13

260 ##\$aРоссия\$bТатарстан\$cКукморский район\$dНырья, деревня

EX 14

260 ##\$oЦентральная Европа\$mРейн, река

EX 15

260 ##\$dСанкт-Петербург, город\$eЛетний сад

280 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Field Definition

This field contains a term or terms indicating the form, genre or physical characteristics used as an access point.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable for alternative script forms.

Indicators

- Indicator 1 blank (not defined)
Indicator 2 specifies the type of the entity:
Not defined
0 Work
2 Manifestation
3 Item

Subfields

Data Subfields

- \$a** Entry element
The term in the form prescribed by the system of form access points used. Not repeatable.
- \$j** Form subdivision
A term added to the subject access point to further specify the kind(s) or genre(s) of material (EX 9). Agencies not using this subdivision should use \$x instead (EX 10). Repeatable.
- \$x** Topical subdivision
A term added to the form access point to specify the aspect that the access point represents (EX 2). Repeatable.
- \$y** Geographical subdivision
A term added to a subject access point to specify a place in relation to a form, genre or physical characteristic that the subject access point represents (EX 1). Repeatable.
- \$z** Chronological Subdivision.
A term added to a subject access point to specify the period in time in relation to a form, genre or physical characteristic that the subject access point represents (EX 1, 2). Repeatable.

Control Subfields

- \$7 Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point
See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.
- \$8 Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point
See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field contains the preferred form of a form, genre or physical characteristics in accordance with the provisions of the system of form access points in use by the agency which created it.

Related Fields

- 152 RULES
250 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL SUBJECT
480 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS
580 RELATED ACCESS POINT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS
780 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Examples

EX 1

152 ##\$brbgenr
280 ##\$aEmblem books\$yGermany\$z17th century

A form access point constructed according to *Genre terms: thesaurus for use in rare book and special collections cataloguing*.

EX 2

152 ##\$brbgenr
280 ##\$aDictionaries\$xFrench\$z18th century

The item is a French Dictionary published in 1770.

EX 3

152 ##\$brbpap
280 ##\$aBritish marbled papers\$y Germany\$z17th century

The term indicating physical characteristics of the item constructed according to *Paper terms: a thesaurus for use in rare book and special collections cataloguing*.

EX 4

152 ##\$brbtyp
280 ##\$aOld style types

EX 5

152 ##\$brbprov
280 ##\$aArmorial bookplates

EX 6

152 ##\$brbpri
280 ##\$aManuscript corrections

EX 7

Record 1
152 ##\$bgsafd
280 ##\$aSuperhero films
825 ##\$aExample of particular hero at Superman films
830 ##\$aFor films with particular heroes, use the appropriate LCSH

Record 2
152 ##\$blc
250 ##\$aSuperman films
580 ##\$2gsafd\$aSuperhero films

A form access point constructed according to *Guidelines on subject access to individual works of fiction, drama, etc.*, C.f. *gsafd* note “Consult LCSH for films with particular heroes, e.g., *Superman films*”.

EX 8

Record 1
152 ##\$bgsafd
280 ##\$aComedies
550 ##\$2lc\$aComedy

A *Guidelines on subject access to individual works of fiction, drama, etc.*, access point for documents consisting of comedies. Normally a *gsafd* term for documents of ... will be identical to the corresponding Library of Congress Subject Heading for documents about... This is one of the exceptions.

Record 2
152 ##\$blc
250 ##\$aComedy
580 ##\$2gsafd\$aComedies

An LCSH for documents about comedies.

EX 9

280 ##\$aChildren's stories\$jPictorial works

EX 10

280 ##\$aChildren's stories\$xPictorial works

Examples 11 and 12 illustrate alternative approaches to coding form; either explicitly using subfield \$j or as a topical subdivision, using subfield \$x.

EX 11

152 ##\$brbgendr
280 #0\$aEmblem books\$yGermany\$z17th century

EX 12

152 ##\$brbprov
280 #3\$aArmorial bookplates

EX 13

152 ##\$bnlr_sh

280 ##\$aЭнциклопедии

300 1#\$aСправочное издание, содержащее в обобщенном виде основные сведения по одной или всем отраслям знаний и практической деятельности, изложенные в виде кратких статей, расположенных в алфавитном или систематическом порядке

Note in 300 in English: A comprehensive compendium that holds information from either all branches of knowledge or a particular branch of knowledge.

3-- NOTES BLOCK

Definition and Scope of Fields

Information notes are used in an authority record to provide historical information about an access point or to provide information when simple references generated from variant or related access points do not explain adequately a relationship. An information note in a reference record explains relationships between the reference access point and the authorized access point(s) to which the user of the reference is directed. Information notes in general explanatory records give the conventions used in formulating or filing authorized access points of the type one might expect to find under the form given in the explanatory access point.

The following information note fields are defined:

- 300 Information Note
- 305 Textual See Also Reference Note
- 310 Textual See Reference Note
- 320 General Explanatory Reference Note
- 330 General Scope Note
- 340 Biography and Activity Note
- 341 Activity Note Pertaining to Printer/Publisher
- 356 Geographical Note

Occurrence

The fields in the 3-- block are optional and repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

All information notes are in a textual form suitable for display to the public, for whom they are intended. Notes intended primarily to guide cataloguers are carried in the 8-- SOURCE INFORMATION BLOCK.

Only the following control subfields may be used in the 3-- fields:

- \$6 Interfield Linking Data
- \$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point

The use of the control subfields is described in a special section immediately preceding the 2-- AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT BLOCK description.

300 INFORMATION NOTE

Field Definition

This field is used in an *authority* or a *reference* record to assist in explaining the relationship between the 2-- access point and other entities. This field is also used to provide information which helps to identify an access point.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 specifies the type of note:
0 Note concerns name or title use of access point
1 Note concerns subject use of access point

Indicator 2 blank (not defined).

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a Information note
An information note in natural language. Mandatory. Not repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$6 Interfield linking data
See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of cataloguing and base access point
See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.

Examples

EX 1

Record 1 (Authority record)
210 01\$aOntario.\$bOffice of Arbitration
300 0#\$aReplaced Ontario Labour-Management Arbitration Commission on Sept. 1, 1979.
510 02\$5a\$aOntario Labour-Management Arbitration Commission

Record 2 (Authority record)
210 02\$aOntario Labour-Management Arbitration Commission
300 0#\$aReplaced by Ontario. Office of Arbitration on Sept. 1, 1979.
510 01\$5b\$aOntario.\$bOffice of Arbitration

EX 2

Record 1 (Authority record)
200 #1\$aØrn,\$bB.

300 0#~~\$a~~Joint pseudonym of Mette Bader, Hans Jørn Christensen, Jørgen Døør and others.
 500 #1\$5f~~\$a~~Bader,\$bMette
 500 #1\$5f~~\$a~~Christensen,\$bHans Jørn
 500 #1\$5f~~\$a~~Døør,\$bJørgen,\$f1933-

Record 2 (Authority record)

200 #1~~\$a~~Bader,\$bMette
 500 #1\$5l~~\$a~~Ørn,\$bB.

Record 3 (Authority record)

200 #1~~\$a~~Christensen,\$bHans Jørn
 500 #1\$5l~~\$a~~Ørn,\$bB.

Record 4 (Authority record)

200 #1~~\$a~~Døør,\$bJørgen,\$f1933-
 500 #1\$5l~~\$a~~Ørn,\$bB.

EX 3

210 01~~\$a~~Canada.\$bRoyal Commission on Banking Finance
 300 0#~~\$a~~Established Oct. 18, 1961. Final report submitted Feb. 4, 1964. Chairman: Dana Harris Porter.

Note: Example of an information note with no related references.

EX 4

210 02~~\$a~~ЦНИИ морского флота\$cЛенинград
 300 0#~~\$a~~Образован в 1939 г. В 1953 г. институт был переименован, а с 1954 по 1987 гг. вновь существовал под прежним наименованием

EX 5

200 #1~~\$a~~Бурбаки\$bH.\$gНикола
 300 0#~~\$a~~Коллективный псевдоним группы французских математиков

EX 6

210 02~~\$a~~≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠ЛИБНЕТ≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠, национальный информационно-библиотечный центр\$cМосква, город
 300 1#~~\$a~~Центр основан двумя национальными библиотеками России: Российской государственной библиотекой и Российской национальной библиотекой в марте 2001 года для реализации проектов сотрудничества российских библиотек в области создания, обмена и использования электронных ресурсов на базе современных технологий

305 TEXTUAL SEE ALSO REFERENCE NOTE

Field Definition

This field is used in an *authority* record when an adequate see also reference cannot be constructed solely from the content of one or more 5-- related access point field(s) contained in authority records for the related access points. The authorized access point referred from is the 2-- record access point of the authority record. Each authorized access point referred to and the "see also" (or similar) instruction, are given in a 305 field.

This note is generally used in addition to, not in lieu of, the 5-- related access point fields in records for the related access points. The authorized access point in the 2-- record access point field is traced as a 5-- related access point in the authority record for each access point referred to in the 305 note. If the relationship among the authorized access points is reciprocal, the authority record that carries this note also carries 5-- related entity fields for each access point referred to in the note. If the note does not refer directly to other authorized access points but only gives examples, then there will be no corresponding access points. The example access points should be cited in an 825 EXAMPLE UNDER NOTE in the authority record for each access point.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 specifies the type of note:
0 Note concerns name or title use of access point
1 Note concerns subject use of access point

Indicator 2 blank (undefined)

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a Instruction phrase
A see also reference instruction phrase. This subfield must be present if the field is used. Repeatable.

\$b Access point referred to
The related access point to be searched under in the catalogue. Transcribe the access point according to the rules in use by the agency, including any required punctuation. Repeatable for each access point referred to.

Control Subfields

\$6 Interfield linking data
See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.

- \$7 Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point
See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.

Examples

EX 1

Record 1 (Authority record)

- 210 01\$aConnecticut.\$bDept. of Social Services
300 0#\$aIn Jan. 1979 the Connecticut Dept. of Social Services split to form the Dept. of Human Resources and the Dept. of Income Maintenance.
305 0#\$aWorks by these bodies are found under the following access points according to the name used at the time of publication:\$bConnecticut. Dept. of Social Services;\$bConnecticut. Dept. of Human Resources;\$bConnecticut. Dept. of Income Maintenance
330 1#\$aWorks about these bodies are entered under one or more of the names resulting from the separation. Works limited in coverage to the pre-separation period are entered under the name of the original body.
410 01\$aConnecticut.\$bSocial Services, Dept. of
510 01\$5b0\$aConnecticut.\$bDept. of Human Resources
510 01\$5b0\$aConnecticut.\$bDept. of Income Maintenance

Record 2 (Authority record)

- 210 01\$aConnecticut.\$bDept. of Income Maintenance
300 0#\$aIn Jan. 1979 the Connecticut Dept. of Social Services split to form the Dept. of Human Resources and the Dept. of Income Maintenance.
305 0#\$aWorks by these bodies are found under the following access points according to the name used at the time of publication:\$bConnecticut. Dept. of Social Services;\$bConnecticut. Dept. of Human Resources;\$bConnecticut. Dept. of Income Maintenance
330 1#\$aWorks about these bodies are entered under one or more of the names resulting from the separation. Works limited in coverage to the pre-separation period are entered under the name of the original body.
410 01\$aConnecticut.\$bIncome Maintenance, Dept. of
510 01\$5a0\$aConnecticut.\$bDept. of Social Services
510 01\$5z0\$aConnecticut.\$bDept. of Human Resources

Record 3 (Authority record)

- 210 01\$aConnecticut.\$bDept. of Human Resources
300 0#\$aIn Jan. 1979 the Connecticut Dept. of Social Services split to form the Dept. of Human Resources and the Dept. of Income Maintenance.
305 0#\$aWorks by these bodies are found under the following access points according to the name used at the time of publication:\$bConnecticut. Dept. of Social Services;\$bConnecticut. Dept. of Human Resources;\$bConnecticut. Dept. of Income Maintenance
330 1#\$aWorks about these bodies are entered under one or more of the names resulting from the separation. Works limited in coverage to the pre-separation period are entered under the name of the original body.
410 01\$aConnecticut.\$bHuman Resources, Dept. of
510 01\$5a0\$aConnecticut.\$bDept. of Social Services
510 01\$5z0\$aConnecticut.\$bDept. of Income Maintenance

EX 2

(Authority record)

200 #1\$aPage,\$bH.A.

305 0#\$aFor works of this author written under his real name, see also\$bJapp, Alexander H.

305 0#\$aFor works written under another pseudonym, see also\$bGray, E. Condor.

500 #1\$5f0\$aJapp,\$bAlexander H.

500 #1\$5e0\$aGray\$eE. Condor

EX 3

Record 1 (Authority record)

250 ##\$aCollectors and collecting

305 ##\$aSee also subdivisions\$bCollectors and collecting\$aand \$bCollection and preservation\$aunder names of objects collected, e.g.,\$bPostage stamps--Collectors and collecting, \$bZoological specimens--Collection and preservation.

Note: This note gives information and includes examples but does not point to other specific authorized access points, thus there are no 5-- related access point fields in records for the access points given as examples. Those records should contain an 825 EXAMPLE UNDER NOTE that cites this record.

Record 2 (Authority record)

250 ##\$aPostage stamps

825 1#\$aExample under Collectors and collecting.

EX 4

Record 1 (Authority record)

152 ##\$aRCR

210 02\$a≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠Красная Башкирия≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠, газета\$cУфа

305 0#\$aС 1951 по 1999 гг. см. в каталоге:\$b"Советская Башкирия", газета (Уфа)

305 0#\$aС 1999 по 2001 гг. см. в каталоге:\$b"Известия Башкирии", газета (Уфа)

305 0#\$aС 2001 г. см. в каталоге:\$b"Республика Башкортостан", газета (Уфа)

410 02\$5z\$a≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠Власть труда≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠, газета\$cУфа

510 02\$5b0\$a≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠Советская Башкирия≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠, газета\$cУфа

510 02\$5b0\$a≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠Известия Башкирии≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠, газета\$cУфа

510 02\$5b0\$a≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠Республика Башкортостан≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠, газета\$cУфа

Record 2 (Authority record)

152 ##\$aRCR

210 02\$a≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠Советская Башкирия≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠, газета\$cУфа

305 0#\$aДо 1951 г. см. в каталоге:\$b"Красная Башкирия", газета (Уфа)

305 0#\$aС 1999 по 2001 гг. см. в каталоге:\$b"Известия Башкирии", газета (Уфа)

305 0#\$aС 2001 г. см. в каталоге:\$b"Республика Башкортостан", газета (Уфа)

510 02\$a≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠Красная Башкирия≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠, газета\$cУфа

510 02\$5b0\$a≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠Известия Башкирии≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠, газета\$cУфа

510 02\$5b0\$a≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠Республика Башкортостан≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠, газета\$cУфа

Record 3 (Authority record)

152 ##\$aRCR

210 02\$a≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠Известия Башкирии≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠, газета\$cУфа

305 0#\$aДо 1951 г. см. в каталоге:\$b"Красная Башкирия", газета (Уфа)

305 0#\$aС 1951 по 1999 гг. см. в каталоге:\$b"Советская Башкирия", газета (Уфа)

305 0#\$aС 2001 г. см. в каталоге:\$b"Республика Башкортостан", газета (Уфа)

510 02\$5b0\$a≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠Республика Башкортостан≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠, газета\$cУфа

510 02\$5a0\$a≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠Красная Башкирия≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠, газета\$cУфа

510 02\$5a0\$a≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠Советская Башкирия≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠, газета\$cУфа

Record 4 (Authority record)

152 ##\$aRCR

210 02\$a≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠Республика Башкортостан≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠, газета\$cУфа

305 0#\$aДо 1951 г. см. в каталоге:\$b"Красная Башкирия", газета (Уфа)

305 0#\$aС 1951 по 1999 гг. см. в каталоге:\$b"Советская Башкирия", газета (Уфа)

305 0#\$aС 1999 по 2001 гг. см. в каталоге:\$b"Известия Башкирии", газета (Уфа)

410 02\$z\$aРеспубликанская общественно-политическая газета "Республика Башкортостан"\$cУфа

510 02\$5a0\$a≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠Красная Башкирия≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠, газета\$cУфа

510 02\$5a0\$a≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠Советская Башкирия≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠, газета\$cУфа

510 02\$5a0\$a≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠Известия Башкирии≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠, газета\$cУфа

EX 5

Record 1

152 ##\$bnlr_sh

250 ##\$aУлицы

305 1#\$aЛитературу об улицах отдельных городов см. также под назв. соответствующего города с подзаголовком – Улицы, например \$bМосква, город – Улицы

Record 2

152 ##\$bnlr_sh

215 ##\$aМосква, город\$xУлицы\$xИстория

825 ##\$aИспользуется как пример в записи: Улицы

EX 6

152 ##\$bnlr_sh

280 ##\$aЭнциклопедии

300 1#\$aСправочное издание, содержащее в обобщенном виде основные сведения по одной или всем отраслям знаний и практической деятельности, изложенные в виде кратких статей, расположенных в алфавитном или систематическом порядке

305 1#\$aСм. также под названием отдельных предметов с подзаголовком "Энциклопедии", например:\$bТехника – Энциклопедии

310 TEXTUAL SEE REFERENCE NOTE

Field Definition

This field is used in a *reference* record when an adequate see reference cannot be constructed solely from the content of one or more 4-- variant access point field(s). The variant form of name referred from is the 2-- record access point of the reference record. Each access point referred to and the "see" (or similar) instruction are given in a 310 field. The access point of the 2-- field of the reference record is traced as a 4-- variant access point field in the authority record for each access point referred to, unless the note gives only examples, in which case there are no 4-- variant access point fields but an 825 EXAMPLE UNDER NOTE is used in the authority record for each access point.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 specifies the type of note:
0 Note concerns name or title use of access point
1 Note concerns subject use of access point

Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a Instruction phrase
A see reference instruction phrase. This subfield must be present if the field is used. Repeatable.

\$b Access point referred to
The authorized access point to be searched under in the catalogue. Transcribe the access point according to the rules in use by the agency, including any required punctuation. Repeatable for each access point referred to.

Control Subfields

\$6 Interfield linking data
See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point
See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.

Examples**EX 1**

Record 1 (Reference record)

001 82-0062483

200 #1\$aMahfouz,\$bNaguib

310 0#\$aSearch under\$bMa hfūz, Najīb, 1882-\$bMa hfūuz, Najīb,\$f1912-

Record 2 (Authority record)

001 81-000236

200 #1\$aMa hfūz,\$bNajīb,\$f1882-

400 #1\$382-0062483\$5|0\$aMahfouz,\$bNaguib

Record 3 (Authority record)

001 80-004964

200 #1\$aMa hfūz,\$bNajīb,\$f1912-

400 #1\$382-0062483\$5|0\$aMahfouz,\$bNaguib

EX 2

Record Label, character position 6 = y (reference record)

250 ##\$aTravel regulations

310 1#\$aSee subdivision\$bOfficials and employees--Travel regulations\$aunder countries, government departments, cities, etc.; and subdivision\$bTravel regulations\$aunder special categories of officials, e.g.,\$bJudges--Travel regulations

EX 3

200 #1\$aЖемчужников\$bА. М.\$gАлександр Михайлович

310 0#\$aПубликовался только в составе коллективного псевдонима:\$bКозьма Прутков

320 GENERAL EXPLANATORY REFERENCE NOTE

Field Definition

This field is used in a *general explanatory* record to provide explanatory information to assist in searching or filing. The word or phrase referred from is given in the 2-- field and the explanatory information is given in a 320 field. The reference is not traced on any authority record.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)
Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a General explanatory reference note
 Contains the text of the explanatory note. Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$6 Interfield linking data
 See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point
 See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.

Examples

EX 1

Record Label, character position 6 = z (general explanatory record)
200 #0\$aDe la
320 ##\$aFor names beginning with a prefix, search under the prefix (under each element if the prefix is made up of multiple words) as well as under the name following the prefix.

EX 2

152 ##\$bnlr_sh
250 ##\$aВоенные уставы и наставления
320 ##\$aДокументы об Общевоинских уставах отдельных стран см. под названием страны, например: Российская Федерация. Военные уставы и наставления

330 GENERAL SCOPE NOTE

Field Definition

This field is used in an *authority* record to describe the scope of the access point in the 2--field. Scope information may give a precise definition of a potentially ambiguous term, contrasting information about similar terms, notices to users, etc.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 specifies the type of note:
0 Note concerns name or title use of access point
1 Note concerns subject use of access point

Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a General scope note
Contains the text of the scope note. Not repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$6 Interfield linking data
See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.
\$7 Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point
See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.

Examples

EX 1

200 #1\$aShakespeare,\$bWilliam,\$f1564-1616
330 1#\$aThe subdivisions provided under this access point represent for the greater part standard subdivisions usable under any literary author access point and do not necessarily pertain to Shakespeare.

EX 2

Record 1
250 ##\$aFire-damp
330 1#\$aHere are entered works on methane as a combustible gas formed in coal mines.
Works on methane present in a stratum of coal are entered under Coalbed methane.

Record 2
250 ##\$aCoalbed methane
825 1#\$aCited under Fire-damp

EX 3

220 ##\$aРомановы\$ссемья

330 ##\$aПод данной рубрикой собираются материалы, повествующие о жизни и деятельности лиц, связанных родственными узами с династией Романовых

EX 4

250 ##\$aДети\$xРазвитие внимания

330 ##\$aПод данной ПР собираются документы о развитии внимания у детей всех возрастов

340 BIOGRAPHY AND ACTIVITY NOTE

Field Definition

This field is used in an *authority* or a *reference* record to record biographical or historical details and/or activity information about the entity defined in the 2-- fields.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)
Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

Data Subfields

- \$a Biographical note
Contains the text of the biographical or historical note. Not repeatable.
- \$b Activity note
Contains the text of the activity note. Not repeatable.
- \$p Affiliation/Address
Contains the name of a group, e.g., an institution, and/or place with which the person, corporate body, family etc. is affiliated or was affiliated through employment, membership, cultural identity, residence, etc. Repeatable.

Control Subfields

- \$6 Interfield Linking Data
See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.
- \$7 Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point
See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The contents of the field will be determined by the provisions of the cataloguing rules used by the cataloguing agency.

Related Fields

341 ACTIVITY NOTE PERTAINING TO PRINTER/PUBLISHER
640 PLACE(S) AND DATE(S) ASSOCIATED WITH THE ENTITY

Examples

EX 1

102 ##\$aUS\$aDE
152 ##\$aAACR2
200 #1\$aArendt\$bHannah\$f1906-1975
340 ##\$aGerman by birth. Naturalized American in 1951\$bpolitical theorist

EX 2

120 ##\$aca
200 #1\$aMorris,\$bJan,\$f1926-
340 ##\$a James Humphry Morris, 10-2-26; had a sex change operation, took new name "Jan Morris"; intends to complete a trilogy using James Morris, will publish other future books as Jan Morris
500 #1\$aMorris,\$bJames\$,f1926-

EX 3

100 ##\$a19930723frey0103####ba0
101 ##\$aund
102 ##\$aIT
120 ##\$aba
152 ##\$aAFNOR
200 #1\$8freita\$aNiccolini da Sabbio\$bDomenico \$f15..-160.? \$cimprimeur-libraire
300 0#\$aA publié également sous la raison: "Ad signum Seminantis" ("al segno del Seminante") entre 1572 et 1575
300 0#\$aEn 1559-1560 travaille en association avec son frère Cornelio Niccolini da Sabbio
340 ##\$aVenezia, 1557-1605? In contrada San Giulian. Al segno del Seminante
340 ##\$aDominus illuminatio mea et salus mea, quem timebo? Prudentia negotium non Fortuna ducat. Nisi qui legitime certaverit

EX 4

100 ##\$a 19831125frey0103####ba0
101 ##\$aara\$afre
102 ##\$aZZ
150 ##\$af
152 ##\$aAFNOR
210 02\$7ba0yba0y\$8frefre\$aInstitut du monde arabe
300 0#\$aCréé en commun avec les États arabes et la République française. Acte de fondation signé le 28-2-1980. Décret portant reconnaissance d'utilité publique du 14-10-1980
340 ##\$p23 quai Saint-Bernard, 75005 Paris. Tel. 46.34.25.25 (Standard) et 40.51.38.38 (Informations)

EX 5

216 ##\$aColumbia\$cmarque américaine
340 ##\$aDates d'existence : 1890-
340 ##\$aInitialement crée aux États-Unis, elle s'implante en Angleterre en 1928. En 1928, cette filiale connue sous le nom de British Columbia, se sépare de la maison mère américaine pour fonder EMI (Electrical Music Industries) en 1930 en association avec Gramophone. EMI déclare le label Columbia à la Chambre de commerce de Londres en privant la maison mère américaine du droit d'utiliser ce label. En 1945, la maison mère américaine Columbia crée le label CBS pour les exportations vers l'Europe et continue parallèlement à publier sous le label Columbia aux Etats-Unis

EX 6

152 ##\$aRCR

200 #0\$aАввакум\$сЧестной, Дмитрий Семенович, архим.\$f1804-1866

340 ##\$bВостоковед, дипломат, переводчик\$aПринимал участие в кругосветном плавании на фрегате "Паллада" в составе экспедиции Е.В. Путятина. В качестве миссионера долгое время жил в Китае. Данные о рождении противоречивы. Похоронен на кладбище Александро-Невской лавры в Петербурге.

EX 7

152 ##\$aRCR

200 #1\$aБакунин\$bА. И.\$f1872-1968\$gАнтон Игнатьевич

340 ##\$bПрактик сыского дела, основоположник русской научной криминалистики. Автор книг "Психология преступника...", "Теория вероятности преступления", "Пособие по криминалистике..." и др. \$aПосле 1917 года – в эмиграции. Умер в Англии.

History

According to the 2nd edition, definition of this field restricted its use only to personal and family names although examples showed its use also for corporate body names and trademarks. The field definition is now extended to also include these entities. To record biography and activity note for printer/publisher use the new 341 Activity Note Pertaining to Printer/Publisher field. Note that the 340 fields in Example 3 would now be coded as 341.

341 ACTIVITY NOTE PERTAINING TO PRINTER/PUBLISHER

Field Definition

This field is used in an *authority* or *reference* record to record specific data on place, dates of activities, sign and the address of the printer and/or publisher. Used especially for antiquarian printer/publisher.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)

Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a Place of activity

Place where the printer/publisher carries on his activity. Not repeatable.

\$b Dates of activity

Dates of activity of the printer/publisher referring to the place. Not repeatable.

\$c Address

Address of printer/publisher referring to the place as it appears on the publication. Repeatable.

\$d Sign

Sign attributed to the house/workshop of the printer/publisher as appears on the publication. Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$6 Interfield linking data

See specification of Control Subfield above. Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point

See specification of Control Subfield above. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The contents of the field will be determined by the provisions of the cataloguing rules used by the cataloguing agency.

Related Fields

340 BIOGRAPHY AND ACTIVITY NOTE

640 PLACE(S) AND DATE(S) ASSOCIATED WITH THE ENTITY

Examples

EX 1

210 00\$aSermartelli,\$gBartolomeo\$c<1.>

341 ##\$aFirenze\$b1553-1591\$cin la via nuova da San Giuliano presso al Castello\$cpresso
il Vescovado\$dTestuggine

341 ##\$aVenezia\$b1574

EX 2

210 00\$aBonetti,\$gLuca

341 ##\$aFirenze\$b1569

341 ##\$aSiena\$b1571-1609\$scAlla loggia del Papa

EX 3

210 00\$aMeietti,\$gPaolo

341 ##\$aPadova\$b1578-1599\$cpPorteghi alti in contrada San Lorenzo\$dDue Galli

341 ##\$aBologna\$b1590

341 ##\$aVenezia\$b1577-1600

341 ##\$aVicenza\$b1588-1595

EX 4

200 #1\$aChevalier\$bAndré\$f1660?-1747

300 0#\$aDevise(s) : Legent haec nostra nepotes

340 ##\$aImprimeur-libraire ; imprimeur ordinaire du Roi [de France] (et du conseil provincial de Luxembourg) (1686-1698) ; de la ville (et du collège de la Compagnie de Jésus) ; de Sa Majesté Impériale et Catholique (1721-1740) ; de Sa Majesté la Reine de Hongrie et de Bohême (1741-1747)\$aNatif de Bourg-en-Bresse, il fait son apprentissage chez Jean Antoine, à Metz, où il est reçu maître le 24 mai 1685. Il s'établit à Luxembourg en juin 1686 à l'invitation de l'intendant français d'occupation et sous garantie d'exclusivité pour 20 ans. À la suite de l'évacuation de Luxembourg par les troupes françaises (janv. 1698), il perd son monopole puis ses titres (décret impérial du 16 mai 1716), mais un privilège d'imprimeur impérial lui est octroyé par décret du 15 janv. 1721. Conserve, jusqu'en 1697 au moins, une boutique de libraire à Metz. Publie, à partir de 1704, la "Clef du cabinet des princes de l'Europe" sous le pseudonyme de "Jacques Le Sincère, à l'enseigne de la Vérité" et sans indication de lieu. Âgé de 87 ans lors de son décès

341 ##\$aMetz\$b1685-1686

341 ##\$aLuxembourg\$b1686-1747\$scAu carré de (ou : Dans) la rue Neuve (, proche les Révérends pères jésuites)\$cPlace Neuve\$cpRès la place d'Armes

640 1#\$dBourg-en-Bresse\$f#1660####?

640 2#\$dLuxembourg\$f#17470410#

640 3#\$dMetz\$f#16850524#\$i#1686#####

640 3#\$dLuxembourg\$f#168606#####\$i#1747#####

EX 5

200 #1\$aJore\$bClaude\$f1668-1736

340 ##\$aImprimeur-libraire ; imprimeur de l'archevêque et du clergé (1728)\$aFils de Claude I Jore. Reçu maître le 10 juin 1683, il ne s'établit à Rouen qu'en 1699, après avoir travaillé à Paris à partir de 1686. Banni pour 9 ans du ressort du parlement de Paris

par sentence du Châtelet du 19 nov. 1698. Embastillé pour impressions prohibées en sept. 1712, déchu de la maîtrise par lettre de cachet du 1er déc. 1712. Continue néanmoins à exercer dans son propre atelier sous le nom de Jean-Robert Viret. À nouveau embastillé suite à une perquisition du 29 mars 1714, il ne sera élargi que le 13 sept. 1715 et rétabli dans sa maîtrise en 1716\$Associe à son fils Claude-François Jore à partir de 1725 environ

- 341 ##\$aRouen\$b1699-1736\$cRue aux Juifs (, près le Palais)\$cAu haut des degrés du Palais\$cDerrière le Palais, proche la Poterne\$cDans la cour du Palais et à côté de l'hôtel du premier président\$dAux Armes de monseigneur le (ou : du) premier président
640 1#\$f#16680410#
640 2#\$f#17360330#
640 3#\$dRouen\$f#1699#####\$i#1736#####
400 #1\$aJores\$bClaude\$f1668-1736
400 #1\$aJorre\$bClaude\$f1668-1736
700 #1\$aJore\$bClaude\$dII

EX 6

- 200 #1\$aDu Fossé\$bNicolas\$f1569-1645[align left ; 2 blanks between 0 #]
300 0#\$aDevise(s) : Petit à petit
340 ##\$aImprimeur-libraire\$aÂgé de 25 ans en déc. 1594\$aÀ partir de 1607, associé à ses beaux-frères Rolin Thierry et Pierre II Chevalier, parfois sous la raison : "Officina Triadelphorum" ou "Typographia Triadelphorum" et avec pour devise : "Quam bonum et quam jucundum sperare fratres in unum"
341 ##\$aParis\$b1586-1629?\$cRue Saint-Jean-de-Beauvais\$cRue Saint-Jacques\$cRue Saint-Jean-de-Latran\$dAu Vase d'or
640 1#\$f#1569#####
640 2#\$f#1645#####
640 3#\$dParis\$f#1586#####\$i#1629#####?

EX 7

- 200 #1\$aRoux\$bPierre\$f15..-1586? [align left ; 2 blanks between 0 #]
300 0#\$aDevise(s) : Coelo tutissima basis. – Nul ne s'y frote. Patere aut abstinence
340 ##\$aImprimeur-libraire ; à Avignon, imprimeur de l'archevêché (1564)\$aOriginaire de Lyon. Lors de son séjour à Aix, son atelier d'Avignon continue à fonctionner. Veuve attestée, à Lyon, en mars 1586
341 ##\$aAvignon\$b1557-1586\$dÀ l'enseigne de la Sphère
341 ##\$aAix-en-Provence\$b1574-1577\$dAu devant de la grande église Saint-Sauveur
640 1#\$dLyon\$f#15#####
640 2#\$dLyon\$f#1586#####?
640 3#\$dAvignon\$f#1557#####\$i#1586#####
640 3#\$dAix-en-Provence\$f#1574#####\$i#1577#####

EX 8

- 200 #1\$aCouterot\$bJean\$f1636?-1714? [align left ; 2 blanks between 0 #]
340 ##\$aLibraire\$aFrère puîné d'Edme I Couterot. Natif des Ormes-sur-Voulzie (Seine-et-Marne). Reçu apprenti en mai 1650 chez son frère Edme I Couterot. Reçu imprimeur-libraire en mars 1664, il n'a jamais exercé l'imprimerie. Vend son fonds en 1693. Dit âgé de 65 ans lors de l'enquête de nov. 1701. Mort avant 1714
341 ##\$aParis\$b1664-1693\$cRue Saint-Jacques\$cAu Palais, dans la grande salle, au pilier vis-à-vis des degrés de la cour des Aides\$dAu Petit Jésus\$dÀ l'Image Saint Pierre\$dÀ la Fleur de lys\$dAux Cigognes
640 1#\$cSeine-et-Marne\$dOrmes-sur-Voulzie\$f#1636#####?
640 2#\$f#1714#####?
640 3#\$dParis\$f#1664#####\$i#1693#####

356 GEOGRAPHICAL NOTE

Field Definition

This field is used in an *authority* or a *reference* record to record geographical details about the entity recorded in the 215 field.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)
Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a Geographical note
 Contains the text of the geographical note. Not repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$6 Interfield linking data
 See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.

\$7 Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point
 See specification of Control Subfields above. Not repeatable.

Examples

EX 1

152 ##\$bnlr_sh
215 ##\$aПа-де-Кале, пролив
415 ##\$aДуврский пролив
356 ##\$aМежду островом Великобритания и материковой частью Европы

4-- VARIANT ACCESS POINT BLOCK

Definition and Scope of Fields

This block contains variant access points that form the reference structure for the access point in the 2-- field of the record. The following fields are defined:

- 400 Variant Access Point – Personal Name
- 410 Variant Access Point – Corporate Body Name
- 415 Variant Access Point – Territorial or Geographical Name
- 416 Variant Access Point – Trademark
- 417 Variant Access Point – Printer/Publisher Device
- 420 Variant Access Point – Family Name

- 430 Variant Access Point – Title
- 440 Variant Access Point – Name/Title
- 443 Variant Access Point – Conventional Name/Title for Legal and Religious Texts
- 445 Variant Access Point – Name/Collective Title

- 450 Variant Access Point – Topical Subject
- 460 Variant Access Point – Place and Date of Publication, Performance, Provenance, etc.
- 480 Variant Access Point – Form, Genre or Physical Characteristics

Notes on Field Contents

The fields for the 2-- authorized access point and the 4-- variant access points have the same indicators and subfield identifiers. The data subfields in the 4-- block are identical to those specified in the 2-- block, therefore the specifications are not repeated in the 4-- block.

The following control subfields may be used in the 4-- fields:

- \$0 Instruction Phrase
- \$1 Linking Data
- \$2 System Code
- \$3 Authority Record Identifier
- \$4 Relator Code
- \$5 Relationship Control
- \$6 Interfield Linking Data
- \$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point
- \$8 Language of Cataloguing and the Base Access Point

The use of the control subfields is described in a special section immediately preceding the 2-- AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT BLOCK description.

400 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME**Field Definition**

This field contains the variant access point for a form of personal name referred from.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)

Indicator 2 specifies the way the name is entered:
 0 Name entered under forename or direct order
 1 Name entered under surname

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a	Entry element	Not repeatable.
\$b	Part of name other than entry element	Not repeatable.
\$c	Additions to names other than dates	Repeatable.
\$d	Roman numerals	Not repeatable.
\$f	Dates	Not repeatable.
\$g	Expansion of initials of forename	Not repeatable.
\$4	Relator code	Repeatable.
\$j	Form subdivision	Repeatable.
\$x	Topical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$y	Geographical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$z	Chronological subdivision	Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$0	Instruction phrase	Not repeatable.
\$2	System code	Not repeatable.
\$3	Authority record identifier	Not repeatable.
\$5	Relationship control	Not repeatable.
\$6	Interfield linking data	Not repeatable.
\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The access point in 400 is a variant or non-preferred form of the access point in the 2-- field, formulated in accordance with the descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

Related Fields

200 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME

Examples

EX 1

200 #1\$aDuMaurier,\$cDame\$bDaphne

400 #1\$aMaurier,\$cDame\$bDaphne du

EX 2

200 #1\$aWaterman,\$bAnthony M.C.,\$f1931-

400 #1\$aWaterman,\$bA.M.C.

EX 3

200 #1\$aRolfe,\$bFr.

400 #1\$aCorvo,\$cBaron

400 #1\$aRolfe,\$bFrederick William

EX 4

200 #1\$aГорький\$bМ.\$gМаксим\$f1868-1936

400 #1\$f\$aПешков\$bА. М.\$gАлексей Максимович\$f1868-1936

EX 5

200 #0\$aАвраамий\$cДернов, Анатолий Иванович, архиепископ\$f1874-1939

400 #1\$m\$aДернов\$bА. И.\$gАнатолий Иванович\$d1874-1939

EX 6

200 #0\$aВиктория Федоровна\$cвеликая княгиня\$f1876 – 1936

400 #0\$5k\$aВиктория Мелита\$f1876 – 1936

EX 7

200 #0\$aМихаил Федорович\$cцарь русский\$f1596 – 1645

400 #1\$aРоманов\$gМихаил Федорович\$bМ. Ф.\$f1596 – 1645

410 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME**Field Definition**

This field contains the variant access point for a form of corporate body name referred from. Territorial names followed by a corporate body subdivision are considered corporate body names (fields 410); territorial names alone or only with subject subdivisions as additions are considered territorial names (fields 415).

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

- Indicator 1 specifies the kind of corporate body:
The first indicator specifies whether the corporate body is a meeting or not. Meetings include conferences, symposia, etc. If the name of the meeting is a subdivision of the name of a corporate body, the name is regarded as that of a corporate body.
- 0 Corporate name
 - 1 Meeting
- If the source format does not distinguish meeting names from other corporate names, the indicator position should contain the fill character.
- Indicator 2 specifies the way the names are entered:
- 0 Name in inverted form
 - 1 Name entered under place or jurisdiction
 - 2 Name entered under name in direct order

Subfields**Data Subfields**

\$a	Entry element	Not repeatable.
\$b	Subdivision	Repeatable.
\$c	Addition to name or qualifier	Repeatable.
\$d	Number of meeting and/or number of part of meeting	Not repeatable.
\$e	Location of meeting	Not repeatable.
\$f	Date of meeting	Not repeatable.
\$g	Inverted element	Not repeatable.
\$h	Part of name other than entry element and inverted element	Not repeatable.
\$4	Relator code	Repeatable.
\$j	Form subdivision	Repeatable.
\$x	Topical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$y	Geographical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$z	Chronological subdivision	Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$0	Instruction phrase	Not repeatable.
\$2	System code	Not repeatable.
\$3	Authority record identifier	Not repeatable.
\$5	Relationship control	Not repeatable.
\$6	Interfield linking data	Not repeatable.
\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The access point in 410 is a variant or non-preferred form of the access point in the 2-- field, formulated in accordance with the descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

Related Fields

210 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME

Examples

EX 1

210 02\$aDelaware Racing Commission
410 01\$aDelaware.\$bRacing Commission

EX 2

210 02\$aSchweizerisches Rotes Kreuz
410 02\$8gerfre\$aCroix-Rouge suisse

EX 3

210 12\$aSymposium on Endocrines and Nutrition\$(1956 ;\$eUniversity of Michigan)
410 12\$aNutrition Symposium\$(1956 ;\$eUniversity of Michigan)

EX 4

210 01\$aUnited States.\$bCongress\$xCommittees
410 01\$aUnited States.\$bCongress\$xSubcommittees

EX 5

210 02\$aD.B. Lister & Associates
410 00\$aLister\$gD.B.\$h& Associates

EX 6

210 02\$aМеждународный союз по чистой и прикладной химии
410 02\$5d\$aИЮПАК
410 02\$5z\$aСоюз по чистой и прикладной химии
410 02\$5z\$aМеждународный союз по теоретической и прикладной химии
410 02\$5d\$aЮПАК
410 02\$5z\$aМеждународный союз теоретической и прикладной химии

EX 7

210 02\$aBACXНИИЛ\$bНаучная сессия\$f1980

410 12\$5z\$a≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠Пути увеличения производства зерна, кормов, повышения эффективности и устойчивости земледелия", научная сессия BACXНИИЛ\$f1980

EX 8

215 ##\$aKiel-Russee (Allemagne ; camp de concentration)

410 0|\$aArbeitserziehungslager Nordmark

410 0|\$aKonzentrationslager Hassee

410 0|\$aKonzentrationslager Russee

410 0|\$aNordmark

410 0|\$aRussee

410 0|\$aHassee

415 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME

Field Definition

This field contains the variant access point for a form of a territorial or geographical name referred from. Territorial names alone or only with subdivisions as additions are considered territorial names (fields 415); territorial names followed by a corporate body subdivision are considered corporate names (fields 410).

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)

Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a	Entry element	Not repeatable.
\$j	Form subdivision	Repeatable.
\$x	Topical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$y	Geographical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$z	Chronological subdivision	Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$0	Instruction phrase	Not repeatable.
\$2	System code	Not repeatable.
\$3	Authority record identifier	Not repeatable.
\$5	Relationship control	Not repeatable.
\$6	Interfield linking data	Not repeatable.
\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The access point in 415 is a variant or non-preferred form of the access point in the 2-- field, formulated in accordance with the descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

Related Fields

215 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME

Examples

EX 1

215 ##\$aAustralia
415 ##\$aCommonwealth of Australia
415 ##\$aNew Holland

EX 2

215 ##\$aMcAlester (Okla.)
415 ##\$aMcAlester, Okla.

EX 3

250 ##\$aВойна в зоне Персидского залива\$z1990 – 1991
415 ##\$aПерсидский залив\$xВооруженный конфликт\$z1990 – 1991

EX 4

215 ##\$aМорейский принципат
415 ##\$aАхейское княжество

EX 5

215 ##\$aПа-де-Кале, пролив
415 ##\$aДуврский пролив

EX 6

250 ##\$aФалеристика\$yАндропов, г.
415 ##\$aАндропов, г.\$xФалеристика

EX 7

250 ##\$aGuerres napoléoniennes (1800-1815)\$xCampagnes et batailles\$yRussie
415 ##\$aFrance\$z+* 1812.....- 1812.....+:1812: (Invasion de la Russie)
415 ##\$aRussie\$z+* 1812.....- 1812.....+:1812: (Invasion)
450 ##\$aCampagne de Russie (1812)

416 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TRADEMARK

Field Definition

This field contains the variant access point for a form of trademark referred from.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)

Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a	Data element	Not repeatable.
\$f	Dates	Not repeatable.
\$c	Qualification	Repeatable.
\$j	Form subdivision	Repeatable.
\$x	Topical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$y	Geographical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$z	Chronological subdivision	Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$0	Instruction phrase	Not repeatable.
\$2	System code	Not repeatable.
\$3	Authority record identifier	Not repeatable.
\$5	Relationship control	Not repeatable.
\$6	Interfield linking data	Not repeatable.
\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The access point in 416 is a variant or non-preferred form of the access point in the 2-- field, formulated in accordance with the descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

Related Fields

216 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TRADEMARK

Examples

EX 1

216 ##\$aHis Master's Voice

416 ##\$aHMV

EX 2

216 ##\$7ba0yba0a\$8frerus\$aMelodiâ\$cmarque russe

216 ##\$7ba0yca0y\$8frerus\$aМелодия

416 ##\$7ba0yba0e\$8frerus\$aMelodiya

The first field 216 contains the transliterated form using the ISO transliteration scheme. The qualifier is necessary to distinguish the name of the Russian trademark from an otherwise identical New-Caledonian trademark. The second field 216 contains the Cyrillic. The variant form, in 416, appears on the products edited in France and follows no identified transliteration table.

417 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – PRINTER/PUBLISHER DEVICE**Field Definition**

This field contains the variant access point for a form of a printer/publisher device referred from.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)
Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a	Printer/publisher device description	Not repeatable.
\$b	Motto	Repeatable.
\$c	Standard citation	Repeatable.
\$d	Size	Not repeatable.
\$f	Date	Not repeatable.
\$g	Iconographic term	Repeatable.
\$j	Form subdivision	Repeatable.
\$x	Topical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$y	Geographical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$z	Chronological subdivision	Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$0	Instruction phrase	Not repeatable.
\$2	System code	Not repeatable.
\$3	Authority record identifier	Not repeatable.
\$5	Relationship control	Not repeatable.
\$6	Interfield linking data	Not repeatable.
\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The access point in 417 is a variant or non-preferred form of the access point in the 2-- field, formulated in accordance with the rules of standard citations which identify the device.

Related Fields

217 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PRINTER/PUBLISHER DEVICE

420 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME**Field Definition**

This field contains the variant access point for a form of family name referred from.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)

Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a	Entry element	Not repeatable.
\$f	Dates	Not repeatable.
\$c	Type of family	Not repeatable.
\$d	Places associated with the family	Repeatable.
\$4	Relator code	Repeatable.
\$j	Form subdivision	Repeatable.
\$x	Topical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$y	Geographical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$z	Chronological subdivision	Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$0	Instruction phrase	Not repeatable.
\$2	System code	Not repeatable.
\$3	Authority record identifier	Not repeatable.
\$5	Relationship control	Not repeatable.
\$6	Interfield linking data	Not repeatable.
\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The access point in 420 is a variant or non-preferred form of the access point in the 2-- field, formulated in accordance with the descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

Related Fields

220 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME

Examples

EX 1

220 ##\$aMedici\$cHouse of
420 ##\$aHouse of Medici

EX 2

220 ##\$aБаратынские\$срод
420 ##\$aБоратынские\$срод

EX 3

220 ##\$aГурко-Ромейко\$срод
420 ##\$aРомейко\$срод
420 ##\$aГурко\$срод
420 ##\$aРомейко-Гурко\$срод

430 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TITLE**Field Definition**

This field contains the variant access point for a form of title referred from.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)

Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a	Entry element	Not repeatable.
\$b	General material designation	Repeatable.
\$h	Number of section or part	Repeatable.
\$i	Name of section or part	Repeatable.
\$k	Date of publication	Not repeatable.
\$l	Form subdivision	Not repeatable.
\$m	Language	Not repeatable.
\$n	Miscellaneous information	Repeatable.
\$q	Version (or date of version)	Not repeatable.
\$r	Medium of performance (for music)	Repeatable.
\$s	Numeric designation (for music)	Repeatable.
\$u	Key (for music)	Not repeatable.
\$w	Arranged statement (for music)	Not repeatable.
\$j	Form subdivision	Repeatable.
\$x	Topical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$y	Geographical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$z	Chronological subdivision	Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$0	Instruction phrase	Not repeatable.
\$2	System code	Not repeatable.
\$3	Authority record identifier	Not repeatable.
\$5	Relationship control	Not repeatable.
\$6	Interfield linking data	Not repeatable.
\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The access point in 430 is a variant or non-preferred form of the access point in the 2-- field, formulated in accordance with the descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

Related Fields

230 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE

Examples

EX 1

230 ##\$aNibelungenlied

430 ##\$aLied der Nibelungen

EX 2

230 ##\$aBible\$xMusic

430 ##\$aBible\$iO.T.\$iPsalms\$xMusic

EX 3

230 ##\$aSymphonies\$zOrgue\$sN°. 9\$sOp. 70\$uDo Mineur

430 ##\$aSymphonie gothique\$sOp. 70

EX 4

230 ##\$aСлово о полку Игореве

430 ##\$aСлово о походе Игоря Святославовича

430 ##\$aСлово о полку Игоревом, Игоря Святославовича внука Олегова

430 ##\$aИгорь, Великий князь Северский

430 ##\$5z\$aИроническая песнь о походе на половцов удельного князя Новгорода Северского Игоря Святославича

EX 5

240 ##\$1200#1\$aПалиашвили\$gЗахарий Петрович\$b3. П.\$f1871 –

1933\$1230##\$a≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠Абесалом и Этери≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠\$loпера

430 ##\$a≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠Абесалом и Этери≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠\$loпера

440 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE**Field Definition**

This field contains the variant access point for a form of name/title referred from. The data are carried in appropriate subfields according to the techniques described under field 240.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)
Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

A) Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique**Data Subfields**

\$1	Linking data	Repeatable.
-----	--------------	-------------

Control Subfields

\$0	Instruction phrase	Not repeatable.
\$2	System code	Not repeatable.
\$3	Authority record identifier	Not repeatable.
\$5	Relationship control	Not repeatable.
\$6	Interfield linking data	Not repeatable.
\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Each element is coded according to the 2-- field appropriate to the element: 200 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME, 210 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME, 215 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME, or 220 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME for the name; and a 230 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE for the title. The field, indicators, and data subfields for the name and title are embedded in a field 440, with each preceded by subfield identifier \$1.

When control subfields are needed, they should precede the first \$1 subfields containing embedded data.

B) Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique**Data Subfields**

\$a	Name	Not repeatable.
\$t	Title	Not repeatable.
\$j	Form subdivision	Repeatable.

\$x	Topical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$y	Geographical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$z	Chronological subdivision	Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable.

Related Fields

240 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE

Examples

EX 1

240 ##\$1200#1\$aShakespeare,\$bWilliam,\$f1564-1616.\$1230##\$aHamlet
 440 ##\$1200#1\$aShakespeare,\$bWilliam,\$f1564-1616\$1230##\$aTragedy of Hamlet,
 Prince of Denmark

Example of embedded fields technique.

EX 2

240 ##\$aShakespeare, William, 1564-1616\$tHamlet
 440 ##\$aShakespeare, William, 1564-1616\$tTragedy of Hamlet, Prince of Denmark

Example of standard subfields technique.

EX 3

240 ##\$1200#0\$aУ ЧЭНЪЭНЬ\$фок.1500 – 1582\$1230##\$a≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠Путешествие на
 Запад≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠
 440 ##\$1200#0\$aУ ЧЭНЪЭНЬ\$фок.1500 – 1582\$1430##\$a≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠Си ю
 цзи≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠

EX 4

240 ##\$1200#0\$aСаксон Грамматик\$фок.1140 - ок.1208\$1230##\$a"Деяния датчан"
 430 ##\$a"Gesta Danorum"
 440 ##\$1200#0\$aСаксон Грамматик\$фок.1140 - ок.1208\$1230##\$a"Gesta Danorum"

443 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS

Field Definition

This field contains the variant access point for a conventional name/title for legal and religious texts referred from.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)

Indicator 2 specifies the form of conventional name/title:
 1 Name entered under country or other geographical name
 Used for jurisdictional geographical names.
 2 Name entered under other form
 Used for church names.

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a	Entry Element	Not repeatable.
\$b	Subdivision	Repeatable.
\$c	Addition to Name or Qualifier	Repeatable.
\$e	Name of the other party	Not repeatable.
\$f	Date of legal issue or version, or date of the signing	Repeatable.
\$i	Name of section or part	Repeatable.
\$l	Form Subheading	Repeatable.
\$n	Miscellaneous information	Repeatable
\$t	Conventional title	Not repeatable.
\$j	Form subdivision	Repeatable.
\$x	Topical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$y	Geographical subdivision	Repeatable
\$z	Chronological subdivision	Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$0	Instruction phrase	Repeatable.
\$2	System code	Not repeatable.
\$3	Authority record identifier	Not repeatable.
\$5	Relationship control	Not repeatable.
\$6	Interfield linking data	Repeatable.
\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable

Notes on Field Contents

The access point in 443 is a variant or non-preferred form of the access point in the 2-- field, formulated in accordance with the descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it.

Related Fields

243 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL
AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS

445 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – NAME/COLLECTIVE TITLE**Field Definition**

This field contains the variant access point for a form of name/collective title referred from. The data are carried in appropriate subfields according to the techniques described under field 245.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)

Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

A) Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique**Data Subfields**

\$1	Linking data	Repeatable.
-----	--------------	-------------

Control Subfields

\$0	Instruction phrase	Not repeatable.
\$2	System code	Not repeatable.
\$3	Authority record identifier	Not repeatable.
\$5	Relationship control	Not repeatable.
\$6	Interfield linking data	Not repeatable.
\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Each element is coded according to the 2-- field appropriate to the element: 200 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME, 210 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME, 215 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME, or 220 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME for the name; and a 235 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – COLLECTIVE TITLE for the collective title. The tag, indicators, and data for the name and title of these are embedded in a field 445, with each preceded by subfield identifier \$1.

When control subfields are needed, they should precede the first \$1 subfields containing embedded data.

B) Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique**Data Subfields**

\$a	Name	Not repeatable.
\$t	Title	Not repeatable.

\$j	Form subdivision	Repeatable.
\$x	Topical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$y	Geographical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$z	Chronological subdivision	Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable.

Related Fields

245 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/COLLECTIVE TITLE

Examples

EX 1

245 ##\$1200#1\$aShakespeare,\$bWilliam,\$f1564-1616.\$12350#\$aWorks. \$mRussian
445 ##\$1200#1\$aShakespeare,\$bWilliam,\$f1564-1616.\$12350#\$aWorks.\$mUkrainian

Example of the embedded fields technique.

EX 2

245 ##\$aShakespeare, William, 1564-1616\$tWorks. Russian
445 ##\$aShakespeare, William, 1564-1616\$tWorks. Ukrainian

Example of the standard subfields technique.

EX 3

245 ##\$1200#0\$aРафаэль Санти\$f1483 – 1520\$12350#\$aФрески
445 ##\$1400#0\$aРафаэль Санцио\$f1483 – 1520\$12350#\$aФрески

450 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL SUBJECT**Field Definition**

This field contains the variant access point for a topical subject access point or a subject category in coded and/or textual form that is referred from.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)
Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a	Topical subject	Not repeatable.
\$n	Subject category code	Repeatable.
\$m	Subject category subdivision code	Repeatable.
\$j	Form subdivision	Repeatable.
\$x	Topical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$y	Geographical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$z	Chronological subdivision	Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$0	Instruction phrase	Not repeatable.
\$2	System code	Not repeatable.
\$3	Authority record identifier	Not repeatable.
\$5	Relationship control	Not repeatable.
\$6	Interfield linking data	Not repeatable.
\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The access point in 450 is a variant or non-preferred form of the access point in the 2-- field, formulated in accordance with the subject system or the system of subject categories in use by the agency which created it.

Related Fields

250 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL SUBJECT

Examples

EX 1

250 ##\$aFederal aid to education
450 ##\$aEducation\$xFederal aid

EX 2

152 ##\$bnlr_sh
250 ##\$aМультикультурное образование
450 ##\$aОбразование мультикультурное
450 ##\$aПоликультурное образование
450 ##\$aИнтеркультурное образование

EX 3

250 ##\$aВойна в зоне Персидского залива\$z1990 – 1991
450 ##\$aИрако-Кувейтский конфликт\$z1990 – 1991

EX 4

250 ##\$aЧелдоны
300 1#\$aСоциальная группа старожильского населения Сибири
450 ##\$aЧалдоны

EX 5

250 ##\$aЗаповеди библейские
430 ##\$aДекалог
450 ##\$aБиблейские заповеди

EX 6

210 ||\$aRussie\$cTerritoire sous le contrôle des armées blanches\$c1918-1920
330 ##\$aSous cette vedette on trouve les documents sur les gouvernements russes blancs constitués à Omsk puis à Irkoutsk en 1918-1920, dirigés par A.V. Koltchak, puis A.I. Denikine (04-01-1920), enfin par P.N. Wrangel (04-04-1920)
410 ||\$aRussie\$cGouvernements russes blancs\$c1918-1920
450 ##\$aBlancs, Russes
450 ##\$7ba0yba0y\$8fre \$9 \$aRusses blancs
515 ##\$5g\$311939739\$aURSS\$z1917-1921 (Révolution)

460 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION, PERFORMANCE, PROVENANCE ETC.**Field Definition**

This field contains the variant access point for a form of a place and date of publication, production, performance, recording or provenance that is referred from.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (undefined)
Indicator 2 blank (undefined)

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a	Country (nation state)	Not repeatable.
\$b	State or province, etc.	Not repeatable.
\$c	Intermediate political jurisdiction	Repeatable.
\$d	City, etc.	Not repeatable.
\$e	Venue	Repeatable.
\$f	Date	Repeatable.
\$g	Season	Not repeatable.
\$h	Occasion	Not repeatable.
\$i	Final date	Not repeatable.
\$k	Subsection of city, etc.	Repeatable.
\$m	Other geographical regions or features	Repeatable.
\$n	Extraterrestrial areas	Repeatable.
\$o	Geographical areas such as world, hemisphere, continent	Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$0	Instruction phrase	Not repeatable.
\$2	System code	Not repeatable.
\$3	Authority record identifier	Not repeatable.
\$5	Relationship control	Not repeatable.
\$6	Interfield linking data	Not repeatable.
\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The access point in 460 is a variant or non-preferred form of the access point in the 2-- field, formulated in accordance with the rules in use by the agency which created it.

Related Fields

260 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION,
PERFORMANCE, PROVENANCE, ETC.

Examples

EX 1

260 ## \$8hrvita\$aItalija\$dVenezia
460 ## \$8hrvhrv\$aItalija\$dBenetki
460 ## \$8hrvlat\$aItalija\$dVinegia

EX 2

260 ##\$8hrvhrv\$aHrvatska\$dOsijek
460 ##\$8hrvlat\$aHrvatska\$dMursa
460 ##\$8hrvlat\$aHrvatska\$dEssekinum
460 ##\$8hrvhun\$aHrvatska\$dEssek

480 VARIANT ACCESS POINT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Field Definition

This field contains the variant access point for a form, genre and/or physical characteristics access point referred from.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)
Indicator 2 specifies the type of entity:
 # Not defined
 0 Work
 2 Manifestation
 3 Item

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a	Entry Element	Not repeatable.
\$j	Form Subdivision	Repeatable
\$x	Topical Subdivision	Repeatable.
\$y	Geographical Subdivision	Repeatable.
\$z	Chronological Subdivision	Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$0	Instruction phrase	Not repeatable.
\$2	System code	Not repeatable.
\$3	Authority record identifier	Not repeatable.
\$5	Relationship control	Not repeatable.
\$6	Interfield linking data	Not repeatable.
\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The access point in 480 is a variant or non-preferred form of the access point in the 2-- field, formulated in accordance with the provisions of the system of form access points in use by the agency which created it.

Related Fields

280 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL
 CHARACTERISTICS

Examples

EX 1

152 ##\$brbpap
280 ##\$aMarbled papers
480 ##\$aMarble papers

The term "Marbled papers" is used in preference to "Marble papers" by the *ACRL Paper Terms: a Thesaurus for Use in Rare Book and Special Collections Cataloging*.

EX 2

152 ##\$bgsafd
280 ##\$aErotic stories
480 ##\$aAdult fiction

The *Guidelines on subject access to individual works of fiction, drama, etc.*, prefer Erotic Stories to Adult Fiction.

5-- RELATED ACCESS POINT BLOCK

Definition and Scope of Fields

This block contains the related access points that form the reference structure for the access point in the 2-- field of the record. The following fields are defined:

- 500 Related Access Point – Personal Name
- 510 Related Access Point – Corporate Body Name
- 515 Related Access Point – Territorial or Geographical Name
- 516 Related Access Point – Trademark
- 517 Related Access Point – Printer/Publisher Device
- 520 Related Access Point – Family Name

- 530 Related Access Point – Title
- 540 Related Access Point – Name/Title
- 543 Related Access Point – Conventional Name/Title for Legal and Religious Texts
- 545 Related Access Point – Name/Collective Title

- 550 Related Access Point – Topical Subject
- 560 Related Access Point – Place and Date of Publication, Performance, Provenance, etc.
- 580 Related Access Point – Form, Genre or Physical Characteristics

Notes on Field Contents

The fields for the 2-- authorized access point and the 5-- related access points have the same indicators and subfield identifiers. The subfields used in the 5-- block are the same as those specified under the respective 2-- fields and the full specifications are not repeated below.

The following control subfields may be used in fields in the 5-- fields:

- \$0 Instruction Phrase
- \$1 Linking Data
- \$2 System Code
- \$3 Authority Record Identifier
- \$4 Relator Code
- \$5 Relationship Control
- \$6 Interfield Linking Data
- \$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point
- \$8 Language of Cataloguing and the Base Access Point

The use of the control subfields is described in a special section immediately preceding the 2-- AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT BLOCK description.

500 RELATED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME**Field Definition**

This field contains the access point for an authorized form of personal name that is related to the access point in the 2-- field.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)

Indicator 2 specifies the way the name is entered:

0 Name entered under forename or direct order

1 Name entered under surname

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a	Entry element	Not repeatable.
\$b	Part of name other than entry element	Not repeatable.
\$c	Additions to names other than dates	Repeatable.
\$d	Roman numerals	Not repeatable.
\$f	Dates	Not repeatable.
\$g	Expansion of initials of forename	Not repeatable.
\$4	Relator code	Repeatable.
\$j	Form subdivision	Repeatable.
\$x	Topical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$y	Geographical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$z	Chronological subdivision	Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$0	Instruction phrase	Not repeatable.
\$2	System code	Not repeatable.
\$3	Authority record identifier	Not repeatable.
\$5	Relationship control	Not repeatable.
\$6	Interfield linking data	Not repeatable.
\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The field contains a personal name formulated in accordance with the descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it, related to the access point in the 2-- field.

Related Fields

200 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME

Examples

EX 1

200 #1\$aEdwards,\$bP.\$g(Paul)
 500 #1\$aEdwards,\$bPaul

EX 2

200 #0\$aPseudo-Brutus
 500 #1\$aBrutus,\$bMarcus Junius,\$f85?-42 B.C.

EX 3

200 #0\$aKumbel
 500 #1\$5f\$aHein,\$bPiet

EX 4

200 #1\$aRossi\$bJean-Baptiste
 500 #1\$5e\$aJaprisot\$bSébastien

EX 5

200 #1\$aMorris,\$bJohn
 300 0#\$aJoint pseudonym of Morris Cargill and John Hearne
 500 #1\$5f\$aCargill,\$bMorris
 500 #1\$5f\$aHearne,\$bJohn,\$f1925-

EX 6

200 #0\$aКукрыниксы\$схудожники
 305 1#\$aКоллективный псевдоним художников\$bКуприянов Михаил Васильевич\$bКрылов Порфирий Никитич\$bСоколов Николай Александрович
 400 #1\$5f\$aКуприянов\$bМ. В.\$gМихаил Васильевич\$f1903-
 500 #1\$5f0\$aКрылов\$bП. Н.\$gПорфирий Никитич\$f1902-
 500 #1\$5f0\$aСоколов\$bН. А.\$gНиколай Александрович\$f1903-

EX 7

215 ##\$aЕлец, город (Липецкая область)\$xИстория
 500 #1\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661417544\$5h\$aЗаусайлов\$bА. Н.\$gАлександр Николаевич\$f1860 – 1915
 500 #1\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661426748\$5h\$aСтахович\$bМ. А.\$gМихаил Александрович\$f1861 – 1923

EX 8

215 ##\$aРоссия\$xИстория\$z1-я пол. 19 в.
 500 #1\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661471681\$5h\$aКарамзин\$bА. Н.\$gАндрей Николаевич\$f1814 – 1854

510 RELATED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME

Field Definition

This field contains the access point for an authorized form of corporate body name that is related to the access point in the 2-- field. Territorial names followed by a corporate body subdivision are considered corporate body names (fields 510); territorial names alone or only with subject subdivisions as additions are considered territorial names (fields 515).

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 specifies the kind of corporate body:
The first indicator specifies whether the corporate body is a meeting or not. Meetings include conferences, symposia, etc. If the name of the meeting is a subdivision of the name of a corporate body, the name is regarded as that of a corporate body.

- 0 Corporate name
- 1 Meeting

If the source format does not distinguish meeting names from other corporate names, the indicator position should contain the fill character.

Indicator 2 specifies the way the names are entered:
0 Name in inverted form
1 Name entered under place or jurisdiction
2 Name entered under name in direct order

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a	Entry element	Not repeatable.
\$b	Subdivision	Repeatable.
\$c	Addition to name or qualifier	Repeatable.
\$d	Number of meeting and/or number of part of meeting	Not repeatable.
\$e	Location of meeting	Not repeatable.
\$f	Date of meeting	Not repeatable.
\$g	Inverted element	Not repeatable.
\$h	Part of name other than entry element and inverted element	Not repeatable.
\$4	Relator code	Repeatable.
\$j	Form subdivision	Repeatable.
\$x	Topical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$y	Geographical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$z	Chronological subdivision	Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$0	Instruction phrase	Not repeatable.
\$2	System code	Not repeatable.
\$3	Authority record identifier	Not repeatable.
\$5	Relationship control	Not repeatable.
\$6	Interfield linking data	Not repeatable.
\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The field contains a corporate body name formulated in accordance with the descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it, and related to the access point in the 2-- field.

Related Fields

210 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME

Examples

EX 1

210 01\$aGreat Britain.\$bBoard of Trade
 510 01\$5b\$aGreat Britain.\$bDepartment of Trade and Industry
 510 01\$5b\$aGreat Britain.\$bDepartment of Trade

EX 2

210 02\$aAmerican Material Handling Society
 510 02\$5b\$aInternational Material Management Society

EX 3

210 12\$aMeeting in the Matter of Pollution of Lake Erie and Its Tributaries
 510 12\$5a\$aConference in the Matter of Pollution of Lake Erie and Its Tributaries

EX 4

216 ##\$aDanone\$cmarque
 510 02\$3<authority record identifier>\$aDanone
 510 02\$3<authority record identifier>\$aCompagnie Gervais Danone
 300 0#\$aMarque des différentes firmes du groupe Gervais

In this record there are related access points between the trademark (indicated in field 216) and two different firms of the Gervais Group (indicated in fields 510).

EX 5

210 02\$aРоссийская государственная библиотека
 510 02\$5a\$aГосударственная библиотека СССР им. В.И.Ленина

EX 6

210 02\$aВсероссийский НИИ растениеводства им. Н. И. Вавилова\$cСанкт-Петербург
 305 0#\$aС 1930 по 1992 гг. см. в каталоге:\$bВНИИ растениеводства им. Н. И. Вавилова (Ленинград)
 305 0#\$aДо 1930 г. см. в каталоге:\$bВсесоюзный институт прикладной ботаники и новых культур (Ленинград)

410 02\$5z\$aИнститут растениеводства им. Н. И. Вавилова\$cСанкт-Петербург
510 02\$5a0\$aВсесоюзный институт прикладной ботаники и новых
культур\$cЛенинград
510 02\$5a0\$aВНИИ растениеводства им. Н. И. Вавилова\$cЛенинград

EX 7

250 ##\$aБереговые батареи\$yГермания
510 02\$5h\$a≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠Вирус≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠, батарея

515 RELATED ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME

Field Definition

This field contains the access point for an authorized form of territorial or geographical name that is related to the access point in the 2-- field. Territorial names alone or only with subject subdivisions as additions are considered territorial names (fields 515); territorial names followed by a corporate subdivision are considered corporate names (fields 510).

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)

Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a	Entry element	Not repeatable.
\$j	Form subdivision	Repeatable.
\$x	Topical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$y	Geographical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$z	Chronological subdivision	Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$0	Instruction phrase	Not repeatable.
\$2	System code	Not repeatable.
\$3	Authority record identifier	Not repeatable.
\$5	Relationship control	Not repeatable.
\$6	Interfield linking data	Not repeatable.
\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The field contains a territorial or geographic name formulated in accordance with the descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it, and related to the access point in the 2-- field.

Related Fields

215 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME

Examples

EX1

215 ##\$aSri Lanka

515 ##\$aCeylon

EX2

215 ##\$aKabwe (Zambia)

515 ##\$5a\$aBrokes Hill (Zambia)

EX 3

215 ##\$aШри Ланка

515 ##\$5a\$aЦейлон

EX 4

220 ##\$aРамессиды\$сдинастия\$f1206 – ок.1070 до н.э.

515 ##\$5g\$aЕгипет Древний\$xИстория

EX 5

250 ##\$aВойна в зоне Персидского залива\$z1990 – 1991

515 ##\$5g\$aИрак\$xВзаимоотношения с Кувейтом

515 ##\$5g\$aКувейт\$xВзаимоотношения с Ираком

516 RELATED ACCESS POINT – TRADEMARK**Field Definition**

This field contains the access point for an authorized form of trademark name that is related to the access point in the 2-- field.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)
Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields**Data Subfields**

\$a	Data element	Not repeatable.
\$f	Dates	Not repeatable.
\$c	Qualification	Repeatable.
\$j	Form Subdivision	Repeatable.
\$x	Topical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$y	Geographical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$z	Chronological subdivision	Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$0	Instruction phrase	Not repeatable.
\$2	System code	Not repeatable.
\$3	Authority record identifier	Not repeatable.
\$5	Relationship control	Not repeatable.
\$6	Interfield linking data	Not repeatable.
\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The field contains a trademark name formulated in accordance with the descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it, and related to the access point in the 2-- field.

Related Fields

216 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TRADEMARK

Examples

EX 1

216 ##\$aColumbia\$cmarque américaine

516 ##\$3<authority record identifier>\$5h\$aColumbia Masterworks

EX 2

210 02\$aDanone

516 ##\$3<authority record identifier>\$aDanone\$cmarque

In this record the field 516 is used to make a related access point between a corporate body access point (210 \$aDanone) and a trademark access point (516 \$aDanone\$cmarque).

517 RELATED ACCESS POINT – PRINTER/PUBLISHER DEVICE**Field Definition**

This field contains the access point for an authorized form of printer/publisher device name that is related to the access point in the 2-- field.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)
Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a	Printer/publisher device description	Not repeatable.
\$b	Motto	Repeatable.
\$c	Standard citation	Repeatable.
\$d	Size	Not repeatable.
\$f	Date	Not repeatable.
\$g	Iconographic term	Repeatable.
\$j	Form subdivision	Repeatable.
\$x	Topical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$y	Geographical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$z	Chronological subdivision	Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$0	Instruction phrase	Not repeatable.
\$2	System code	Not repeatable.
\$3	Authority record identifier	Not repeatable.
\$5	Relationship control	Not repeatable.
\$6	Interfield linking data	Not repeatable.
\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The field contains a printer/publisher device name formulated in accordance with the rules of standard citations which identify the device used by the agency which created it, and related to the access point in the 2-- field.

Related Fields

217 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PRINTER /PUBLISHER DEVICE

Examples

EX 1

152 ## \$aRICA
 210 00\$aSermartelli,\$gBartolomeo\$c<1>
 340 ##\$aTipografo e libraio attivo a Firenze, figlio di Michelangelo de' Libri. Aggiunse al proprio nome il cognome del suo mecenate, che apparteneva alla famiglia Martelli. Cominciò a stampare nel 1553, ma fino al 1563 lavorò poco. Nel 1553 aveva casa e bottega presso il Castello, dal 1559 si spostò nelle vicinanze del Vescovado. M. l'11.4.1604. Dal 1591 gli successe nella direzione dell'Officina il figlio Michelangelo, che stampò fino al 1608.
 341 ##\$aFirenze\$b1553-1591\$c In la via nuova da San Giuliano presso al Castello \$cpresso il Vescovado\$dTestuggine
 341 ##\$aVenezia, 1574
 410 00\$aSermartellius\$gBartholomaeus\$c<1>\$3IT\Edit16\CNCT005648
 410 02\$aBartolomeo di Michelagnuolo S. M.\$3IT\Edit16\CNCT004089
 517 ##\$3IT\Edit16\CNCM001081\$aTartaruga che tiene sul guscio una vela con giglio fiorentino. In cornice figurata\$cU132
 517 ##\$3IT\Edit16\CNCM000202\$aTartaruga che tiene sul guscio una vela con giglio fiorentino. In cornice figurata\$cV78\$cZ1153
 517 ##\$3IT\Edit16\CNCM000083\$aTartaruga che tiene sul guscio una vela con giglio fiorentino. In cornice figurata\$cV78\$cZ1153
 517 ##\$3IT\Edit16\CNCM000084\$aTartaruga che tiene sul guscio una vela con giglio fiorentino. In cornice figurata\$cZ1152
 517 ##\$3IT\Edit16\CNCM001267\$aTartaruga che tiene sul guscio una vela. In cornice figurata\$cU255
 517 ##\$3IT\Edit16\CNCM000082\$aTartaruga che tiene una vela con giglio fiorentino\$cZ1154
 517 ##\$3IT\Edit16\CNCM000614\$aTartaruga che tiene una vela con giglio fiorentino. In cornice figurata\$cA58\$cZ1155
 801 ##\$3aIT\$bICCU\$c2004108
 810 ##\$aIndex Aureliensis Catalogus Librorum sedecimo saeculo impressorum. Tertia pars. Tomus III. Clavis typographorum librariorumque saeculi sedecimi, 1992. – IACLA\$bSermartelli, Bartolomeo
 810 ##\$aMaracchi Biagiarelli, Berta. I Sermartelli, discendenti di Bartolomeo de' Libri. In: La Bibliofilia, 63 (1961), 3, p. 281-288. – MBSDB\$bSermartelli, Bartolomeo
 810 ##\$aBorsa, Gedeon Clavis typographorum librariorumque italiae, 1465-1600., 1980. – BORSA\$bSermartelli, Bartolomeo
 810 ##\$aShort-title Catalogue of Books printed in Italy and of Italian Books printed in other countries from 1465 to 1600 now in the British Library, 1986. – BMSTC\$bSermartelli, Bartolomeo
 810 ##\$aCatalogue of Books printed on the Continent of Europe, 1501-1600 in Cambridge Libraries. Compiled by H. M. Adams, 1967 – ADCAM\$bSermartelli, Bartolomeo
 810 ##\$aAscarelli, Fernanda – Menato, Marco. La tipografia del '500 in Italia, 1989 – AMTCI\$bSermartelli Bartolomeo sen.
 810 ##\$aEDIT16\$uhttp://edit16.iccu.sbn.it\$bSermartelli, Bartolomeo\$c<1>
 856 4#\$uhttp://edit16.iccu.sbn.it/scripts/iccu_ext.dll?fn=13&i=160

520 RELATED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME

Field Definition

This field contains the access point for an authorized form of family name that is related to the access point in the 2-- field.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)
Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a	Entry element	Not repeatable.
\$c	Type of family	Not repeatable.
\$d	Places associated with the family	Repeatable.
\$f	Dates	Not repeatable.
\$4	Relator code	Repeatable.
\$j	Form subdivision	Repeatable.
\$x	Topical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$y	Geographical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$z	Chronological subdivision	Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$0	Instruction phrase	Not repeatable.
\$2	System code	Not repeatable.
\$3	Authority record identifier	Not repeatable.
\$5	Relationship control	Not repeatable.
\$6	Interfield linking data	Not repeatable.
\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The field contains a family name formulated in accordance with the descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it, and related to the access point in the 2-- field.

Related Fields

220 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME

Examples

EX 1

220 ##\$aDuecker family
520 ##\$aDruecker family

EX 2

215 ##\$aЮгославия\$xИстория\$z20 в.
520 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661336492\$5g\$aКарагеоргиевич\$сдинастия

EX 3

200 #0\$aКонстантин Николаевич\$свеликий князь\$f1827 – 1892
520 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661238026\$5g\$aРомановы\$ссемья

530 RELATED ACCESS POINT – TITLE**Field Definition**

This field contains the access point for an authorized form of title that is related to the access point in the 2-- field.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)

Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a	Entry element	Not repeatable.
\$b	General material designation	Repeatable.
\$h	Number of section or part	Repeatable.
\$i	Name of section or part	Repeatable.
\$k	Date of publication	Not repeatable.
\$l	Form subdivision	Not repeatable.
\$m	Language	Not repeatable.
\$n	Miscellaneous information	Repeatable.
\$q	Version (or date of version)	Not repeatable.
\$r	Medium of performance (for music)	Repeatable.
\$s	Numeric designation (for music)	Repeatable.
\$u	Key (for music)	Not repeatable.
\$w	Arranged statement (for music)	Not repeatable.
\$j	Form subdivision	Repeatable.
\$x	Topical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$y	Geographical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$z	Chronological subdivision	Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$0	Instruction phrase	Not repeatable.
\$2	System code	Not repeatable.
\$3	Authority record identifier	Not repeatable.
\$5	Relationship control	Not repeatable.
\$6	Interfield linking data	Not repeatable.
\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The field contains a title of a work or work/manifestation formulated in accordance with the descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it, and related to the access point in the 2-- field.

Related Fields

230 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE

Examples

EX 1

230 ##\$aCaedmon manuscripts
530 ##\$aDaniel (Anglo-Saxon poem)

EX 2

230 ##\$aKoran\$xReadings
530 ##\$aKoran\$xCriticism, Textual

EX 3

230 ##\$aAbschied\$sD 957 n° 7
530 ##\$h\$aSchwanengesang\$sD957 et 965 A

EX 4

230 ##\$aБиблия\$iВетхий завет
305 0#\$aОдин из разделов Библии, издания которой см. в каталоге:\$bБиблия
430 ##\$aБиблия\$iВосемь книг Ветхого Завета
430 ##\$aВетхий Завет
430 ##\$aКниги Священного писания Ветхого Завета в русском переводе
530 ##\$aБиблия
530 ##\$aБиблия\$iВетхий Завет\$iПятикнижие
530 ##\$aПророки
530 ##\$aИезикиль

EX 5

200 #1\$aЛютер\$bM.\$gМартин\$f1483 – 1546
530 ##\$aБиблия Мартина Лютера

EX 6

200 #0\$aИов (библейский персонаж)
530 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\6674151\$aБиблия\$iВетхий Завет

EX 7

230 ##\$a≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠Легенды о Граале≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠\$lсредневековый рыцарский роман
530 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\66332490\$aГрааль\$lзападноевропейская средневековая легенда о таинственной чаше
550 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\66417440\$aСредневековая литература

EX 8

250 ##\$aЛетописи русские\$z15 – 16 вв.
530 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661311133\$aТверская летопись

EX 9

215 ##\$aВеликое княжество Литовское

530 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661310904\$5z\$aЛитовский статут\$z1529

540 RELATED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE

Field Definition

This field contains the access point for an authorized form of name/title that is related to the access point in the 2-- field. The data are carried in appropriate subfields according to the techniques described under field 240.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)

Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

A) Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique

Data Subfields

\$1	Linking data	Repeatable.
-----	--------------	-------------

Control Subfields

\$0	Instruction phrase	Not repeatable.
\$2	System code	Not repeatable.
\$3	Authority record identifier	Not repeatable.
\$5	Relationship control	Not repeatable.
\$6	Interfield linking data	Not repeatable.
\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Each element is coded according to the 2-- field appropriate to the element: 200 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME, 210 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME, 215 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME, or 220 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME for the name; and a 230 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE for the title. The tag, indicators, and data subfields for the name and title are embedded in a field 540, with each preceded by subfield identifier \$1.

When control subfields are needed, they should precede the first \$1 subfields containing embedded data.

B) Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique

Data Subfields

\$a	Entry Element	Not repeatable.
\$t	Title	Not repeatable.
\$j	Form subdivision	Repeatable.

\$x	Topical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$y	Geographical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$z	Chronological subdivision	Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable.

Related Fields

240 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE

Examples

EX 1

240 ##\$1200#1\$aFauré,\$bGabriel,\$f1845-1924.\$1230##\$aBallades,\$rpiano,\$sop.19
 540 ##\$385023456\$1200#1\$aFauré,\$bGabriel,\$f1845-1924.\$1230##\$aBallades,\$rpiano
 and orchestra,\$sop.19

EX 2

240 ##\$1200#1\$aЧайковский\$gПетр Ильич\$bП. И.\$f1840 -
 1893\$1230##\$a≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠Ромео и Джульетта≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠
 540 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661390050\$1200#1\$aШекспир\$bУ.\$gУильям\$f1564 – 1616
 \$1230##\$a≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠Ромео и Джульетта≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠\$хМузыкальные ин-
 терпретации

EX 3

250 ##\$aМонументальная скульптура русская\$yВеликий Новгород, город
 540 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\66744978\$5h\$1200#1\$aМикешин\$bМ. О.\$gМихаил Осипович
 \$f1836 – 1896\$1230##\$a≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠Тысячелетию России≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠,
 памятник\$yВеликий Новгород, город

EX 4

245 ##\$1200#1\$aГорький\$bМ.\$gМаксим\$f1868-1936\$12352#\$aАвтобиографические
 повести
 305 1#\$a\$aСм. также под названиями отдельных повестей\$bГорький, Максим, 1868 –
 1936. Детство\$bГорький, Максим, 1868 – 1936. В людях\$bГорький, Максим,
 1868 – 1936. Мои университеты
 540 ##\$1200#1\$aГорький\$bМ.\$gМаксим\$f1868 – 1936\$1230##\$aДетство
 540 ##\$1200#1\$aГорький\$bМ.\$gМаксим\$f1868 – 1936\$1230##\$aВ людях
 540 ##\$1200#1\$aГорький\$bМ.\$gМаксим\$f1868 – 1936\$1230##\$aМои университеты

543 RELATED ACCESS POINT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS

Field Definition

This field contains the access point for an authorized form of conventional name/title for legal and religious texts that is related to the access point in the 2-- field.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

- Indicator 1 blank (not defined)
Indicator 2 specifies the form of conventional name/title:
 1 Name entered under country or other geographical name
 Used for jurisdictional geographical names.
 2 Name entered under other form
 Used for church names.

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a	Entry element	Not repeatable.
\$b	Subdivision	Repeatable.
\$c	Addition to name or qualifier	Repeatable.
\$e	Name of the other party	Not repeatable.
\$f	Date of legal issue or version, or date of the signing	Repeatable.
\$i	Name of section or part	Repeatable.
\$l	Form subheading	Repeatable.
\$n	Miscellaneous information	Repeatable.
\$t	Uniform title	Not repeatable.
\$j	Form subdivision	Repeatable.
\$x	Topical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$y	Geographical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$z	Chronological subdivision	Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$0	Instruction phrase	Repeatable.
\$2	System code	Not repeatable.
\$3	Authority record identifier	Not repeatable.
\$5	Relationship control	Not repeatable.
\$6	Interfield linking data	Repeatable.
\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The field contains a conventional name/title formulated in accordance with the descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system used by the agency which created it, and related to the access point in the 2-- field.

Related Fields

243 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL
AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS

545 RELATED ACCESS POINT – NAME/COLLECTIVE TITLE

Field Definition

This field contains the access point for an authorized form of name/collective title that is related to the access point in the 2-- field. The data are carried in appropriate subfields according to the techniques described under field 245.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)

Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

A) Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique

Data Subfields

\$1	Linking data	Repeatable.
-----	--------------	-------------

Control Subfields

\$0	Instruction phrase	Not repeatable.
\$2	System code	Not repeatable.
\$3	Authority record identifier	Not repeatable.
\$5	Relationship control	Not repeatable.
\$6	Interfield linking data	Not repeatable.
\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Each element is coded according to the 2-- field appropriate to the element: 200 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME, 210 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME, 215 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME, or 220 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME for the name; and a 235 ACCESS POINT – COLLECTIVE TITLE for the collective title. The tag, indicators, and data for the name and title of these are embedded in a field 545, with each preceded by subfield identifier \$1.

When control subfields are needed, they should precede the first \$1 subfields containing embedded data.

B) Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique

Data Subfields

\$a	Name	Not repeatable.
\$t	Title	Not repeatable.
\$j	Form subdivision	Repeatable.

\$x	Topical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$y	Geographical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$z	Chronological subdivision	Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable.

Related Fields

245 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/COLLECTIVE TITLE

Examples

EX 1

245 ##\$1200#1\$aShakespeare,\$bWilliam,\$f1564-1616.\$12350#\$aPlays
545 ##\$1200#1\$aShakespeare,\$bWilliam,\$f1564-1616.\$12350#\$aWorks

EX 2

240 ##\$1200#1\$aГорький\$bМ.\$gМаксим\$f1868-1936\$1230##\$aДетство
545 ##\$1200#1\$aГорький\$bМ.\$gМаксим\$f1868-1936\$12351#\$aАвтобиографические
повести

EX 3

250 ##\$aКнижная иллюстрация\$yГермания\$z16 в.
545 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\66314598\$1200#1\$aГольбейн\$gГанс\$bГ.\$f1497 – 1543
\$12351#\$aИллюстрации к Ветхому Завету
545 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661309695\$1200#1\$aАльтдорфер\$bЭ.\$gЭрхард\$f1490 – 1562
\$12351#\$aИллюстрации к Библии

EX 4

250 ##\$aХоровая музыка русская\$z18 в.
545 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\66156841\$1200#1\$aБортнянский\$gДмитрий Степано-
вич\$bД. С.\$f1751 – 1825\$12351#\$aХоровая музыка

550 RELATED ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL SUBJECT**Field Definition**

This field contains the access point for an authorized form of topical subject or a subject category that is related to the access point in the 2-- field.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)

Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a	Topical subject	Not repeatable.
\$n	Subject category code	Repeatable.
\$m	Subject category subdivision code	Repeatable.
\$j	Form subdivision	Repeatable.
\$x	Topical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$y	Geographical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$z	Chronological subdivision	Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$0	Instruction phrase	Not repeatable.
\$2	System code	Not repeatable.
\$3	Authority record identifier	Not repeatable.
\$5	Relationship control	Not repeatable.
\$6	Interfield linking data	Not repeatable.
\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The field contains a topical subject or a higher level subject category formulated in accordance with the subject system or the system of subject categories in use by the agency which created it, and related to the access point used in the 2-- field.

Related Fields

250 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL SUBJECT

Examples

EX 1

250 ##\$aElectronic data processing\$xData preparation

550 ##\$aInput design, Computers

EX 2

200 #0\$aВильгельм\$dI Молчаливый\$спринц Оранский\$f1533 – 1584

550 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\66254765\$aНидерландская буржуазная революция\$z1566 – 1609

EX 3

250 ##\$aТабасаранский язык

550 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\6612121\$5g\$aИберийско-кавказские языки

EX 4

210 02\$a≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠St.Petersburger Zeitung≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠, газета\$cСанкт-Петербург, город

550 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\66765267\$5g\$aНемецкие газеты\$уРоссия

EX 5

215 ##\$aКударо I, палеолитическая стоянка (Грузия)

550 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\66871997\$5g\$aПалеолит\$уКавказ

EX 6

220 ##\$aВоронцовы-Дашковы\$срод

550 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\66341021\$5g\$aДворянские роды\$уРоссия

**560 RELATED ACCESS POINT – PLACE AND DATE OF
PUBLICATION, PERFORMANCE, PROVENANCE, ETC.****Field Definition**

This field contains the access point for an authorized form of name of a place and date of publication, production, performance, recording or provenance that is related to the access point in the 2-- field.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (undefined)

Indicator 2 blank (undefined)

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a	Country (nation state)	Not repeatable.
\$b	State or province, etc.	Not repeatable.
\$c	Intermediate political jurisdiction	Repeatable.
\$d	City, etc.	Not repeatable.
\$e	Venue	Repeatable.
\$f	Date	Repeatable.
\$g	Season	Not repeatable.
\$h	Occasion	Not repeatable.
\$i	Final date	Not repeatable.
\$k	Subsection of city, etc.	Repeatable.
\$m	Other geographical regions or features	Repeatable.
\$n	Extraterrestrial areas	Repeatable.
\$o	Geographical areas such as world, hemisphere, continent	Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$0	Instruction phrase	Not repeatable.
\$2	System code	Not repeatable.
\$3	Authority record identifier	Not repeatable.
\$5	Relationship control	Not repeatable.
\$6	Interfield linking data	Not repeatable.
\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The field contains the form of a place access point formulated in accordance with the rules in use by the agency which created it, and related to the access point used in the 2-- field.

Related Fields

260 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION,
PERFORMANCE, PROVENANCE, ETC.

580 RELATED ACCESS POINT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Field Definition

This field contains the access point for an authorized form of the form, genre and/or physical characteristics that is related to the access point in the 2-- field.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)
Indicator 2 specifies the type of the entity:
 0 Work
 2 Manifestation
 3 Item
 # Not defined

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a	Entry Element	Not repeatable.
\$j	Form Subdivision	Repeatable.
\$x	Topical Subdivision	Repeatable.
\$y	Geographical Subdivision	Repeatable.
\$z	Chronological Subdivision	Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$0	Instruction phrase	Not repeatable.
\$2	System code	Not repeatable.
\$3	Authority record identifier	Not repeatable.
\$5	Relationship control	Not repeatable.
\$6	Interfield linking data	Not repeatable.
\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field contains a form, genre and/or physical characteristics formulated in accordance with the provisions of the system of form access points in use by the agency which created it, and related to the access point in the 2-- field.

Related Fields

280 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FORM AND GENRE OF THE WORK OR
 PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS OF THE ITEM

Examples

EX 1

152 ##\$brbpap
 280 ##\$aMarbled papers
 480 ##\$aMarble papers
 580 ##\$g\$a[Surface applications of paper]
 580 ##\$h\$aAntique marbled papers
 580 ##\$h\$aBritish marbled papers
 580 ##\$h\$aCocoa marbled papers

In the ACRL *Thesaurus of Paper Terms*, "Marbled papers" has a broader term, "Surface applications or paper" and several narrower terms, e.g., Antique marbled papers, etc.

EX 2

152 ##\$bgsafd
 280 ##\$aAdventure stories
 480 ##\$aSuspense novels
 480 ##\$aSwashbucklers
 580 ##\$aThrillers
 580 ##\$h\$aDetective and mystery stories
 580 ##\$h\$aPicaresque literature
 580 ##\$h\$aRobinsonades
 580 ##\$h\$aRomantic suspense novels

In the *Guidelines on subject access to individual works of fiction, drama, etc.*, "Adventure stories" has the related term "Thrillers" and many narrower terms, including "Robinsonades".

EX 3

152 ##\$bnlr_sh
 230 ##\$7ca0yba0y\$8ruseng\$a≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠Harry Potter and the Philosopher's
 Stone≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠\$lкомпьютерная игра
 580 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661388068\$5g\$aПриключенческие компьютерные игры

EX 4

152 ##\$bnlr_sh
 280 ##\$aВидеокомпакт-диски
 480 ##\$aКомпакт-диски видео
 580 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661370327\$5g\$aКомпакт-диски

6-- CLASSIFICATION AND ENTITY HISTORY BLOCK

Definition and Scope of Fields

This block contains fields for classification numbers and other classifying information that have a subject correspondence with the 2-- authorized access point of the record. These numbers may be single numbers or ranges of numbers, or classifying string of characters. Provision is made for including textual explanatory terms. It also contains a field for information on places and dates associated with the described entity.

The following fields are defined:

640 Place(s) and Date(s) Associated with the Entity

675 Universal Decimal Classification (UDC)

676 Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC)

680 Library of Congress Classification (LCC)

686 Other Classification Numbers

Notes on Field Contents

The following control subfields may be used in fields in the 6-- fields:

\$0 Instruction Phrase

\$2 System Code (for use with field 686 Other Classification Numbers)

\$3 Authority Record Identifier (link to *UNIMARC/Classification Format* record)

The use of the control subfields is described in a special section immediately preceding the 2-- AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT BLOCK description.

640 PLACE(S) AND DATE(S) ASSOCIATED WITH THE ENTITY**Field Definition**

This field contains information on the place(s) and/or date(s) associated with entities defined in 2-- fields.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 specifies the type of information:

Blank (not defined)

Applies to topical subject.

1 Beginning of existence (or birth)

Applies to personal, corporate body, territorial or geographic and family name, trademark and title.

2 End of existence (or death)

Applies to personal, corporate body, territorial or geographic and family name, trademark and title.

3 Activity

Applies to personal, corporate body and family name.

4 Residence

Applies to personal, corporate body and family name.

5 Creation of intellectual or artistic content

Applies to title.

6 First presentation to a public

Applies to title.

0 Other

If present, the field should contain subfield \$0 specifying, in a textual form, the type of place and/or dates associated with the name and/or title.

Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields**Data Subfields**

\$a Country

The country may be recorded either with a country code taken from two-character codes of ISO-3166 (EX 1) or in textual form (EX 4). Not repeatable.

\$b State, region, etc. Not repeatable.

\$c County. Not repeatable.

\$d City. Not repeatable.

\$e Venue. Repeatable.

\$f Date of beginning or unique date. Not repeatable.

\$g Season. Not repeatable.

\$h Occasion. Not repeatable.

\$i Final date. Not repeatable.

List of fixed length data elements for subfields \$f and \$i:

Name of Data Element	Number of Characters	Character Position
Era (Mandatory)	1	0
Date	8	1-8
Date reliability	1	9

0 Era (Mandatory)

A one-character code indicates the era associated with the entity described.

= CE

- = BC

1-8 Date

Eight numeric characters in ISO standard form (ISO 8601) for dates: YYYYMMDD where YYYY represents the year, MM the month with leading 0 if necessary and DD the day of the month with leading 0 if necessary.

If any digit in a year, month, and/or day is unknown, the character position should be blank.

9 Date Reliability

A one-character code indicates the reliability of the date.

= certain date

? = uncertain date

Control Subfields

\$0 Instruction phrase

See specification of Control Subfield above. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The field applies to all types of entities. It enables the establishment of access points for the places and dates associated with the described entity. The field may be repeated if one or more places and/or dates of different types apply to the described entity. However, it may contain only one place or one (or many) date(s).

The field contains a place name in a hierarchical form, i.e., country, state and city, or in a non hierarchical form, i.e., city alone, formulated in accordance with the rules in use by the agency which creates it.

Related Fields

340 BIOGRAPHY AND ACTIVITY NOTE

341 ACTIVITY NOTE PERTAINING TO PRINTER/PUBLISHER

560 RELATED ACCESS POINT – PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION, PERFORMANCE, PROVENANCE, ETC.

Examples**EX 1**

102 ##\$aUS\$aDE
 200 #1\$aArendt\$bHannah\$f1906-1975
 340 ##\$aGerman by birth. Naturalized American in 1951
 640 1#\$aDE\$dHanover\$f#19061014#
 640 2#\$aUS\$dNew York\$f#19751204#

EX 2

200 #1\$aVirgile\$f0070-0019 av. J-C.
 340 ##\$aNé à Andes (aujourd'hui Pietole) en 70 avant J.-C. et mort à Brindisi en 19 avant J-C.
 640 1#\$aItalie\$dPietole\$f-00701015#
 640 2#\$aItalie\$dBrindisi\$f-00190921#

EX 3

200 #1\$aLucrèce\$f0098?-055 av. J-C.
 640 1#\$f-0098#####?
 640 2#\$f-0055#####

EX 4

200 #1\$aBalthus\$f1908-2001
 300 0#\$aPeintre. Directeur de la Villa Médicis à Rome (1961-1978)
 640 1#\$f#19080229#
 640 2#\$f#20010218#
 640 4#\$aItalie\$dRome\$f#1961#####i#1978#####

EX 5

200 #1\$aChevalier\$bAndré\$f1660?-1747
 340 ##\$aImprimeur-libraire ; imprimeur ordinaire du Roi [de France] (et du conseil provincial de Luxembourg) (1686-1698) ; de la ville (et du collège de la Compagnie de Jésus) ; de Sa Majesté Impériale et Catholique (1721-1740) ; de Sa Majesté la Reine de Hongrie et de Bohême (1741-1747)\$ aNatif de Bourg-en-Bresse, il fait son apprentissage chez Jean Antoine, à Metz, où il est reçu maître le 24 mai 1685. Il s'établit à Luxembourg en juin 1686 à l'invitation de l'intendant français d'occupation et sous garantie d'exclusivité pour 20 ans. À la suite de l'évacuation de Luxembourg par les troupes françaises (janv. 1698), il perd son monopole puis ses titres (décret impérial du 16 mai 1716), mais un privilège d'imprimeur impérial lui est octroyé par décret du 15 janv. 1721. Conserve, jusqu'en 1697 au moins, une boutique de libraire à Metz. Publie, à partir de 1704, la "Clef du cabinet des princes de l'Europe" sous le pseudonyme de "Jacques Le Sincère, à l'enseigne de la Vérité" et sans indication de lieu. Âgé de 87 ans lors de son décès
 341 ##\$aMetz\$b1685-1686
 341 ##\$aLuxembourg\$b1686-1747\$cAu carré de (ou : Dans) la rue Neuve (, proche les Révérends pères jésuites)\$cPlace Neuve\$cPrès la place d'Armes
 640 1#\$dBourg-en-Bresse\$f#1660#####?
 640 2#\$dLuxembourg\$f#17470410#
 640 3#\$dMetz\$f#16850524#i#1686#####
 640 3#\$dLuxembourg\$f#168606####i#1747#####

EX 6

230 ##\$aFloire et Blancheflor

300 0#\$aPetit récit idyllique en vers du milieu du XIIe s. (ca 1120), d'après le conte des
"Mille et une nuits" intitulé "Neema et Noam"
640 5#\$f#1120####?

EX 7

230 ##\$aLettres portugaises
300 0#\$aRecueil de cinq lettres parues en 1669 et présentées comme une traduction du
portugais. Longtemps attribué à Mariana Alcoforado. Attribué depuis 1962 à Guillera-
gues
640 6#\$f#1669#####

EX 8

240 ##\$1200#1\$aBerlioz\$bHector\$f1803-1869\$1230##\$aLes Troyens\$sH 133A
300 0#\$aOpéra en 5 actes et 9 tableaux, en deux parties : "La Prise de Troie" (actes I et II),
"Les Troyens à Carthage" (actes III, IV et V)
300 0#\$aDates de composition : avril 1856-1858
300 0#\$aDates de révision : nos 33 et 40 (1859), no 44 (1859 ou 1860), no 52 (janvier
1860)
300 0#\$alre éd. privée (chant et piano) : Paris : imprimé par Thierry frères, [1862]
300 0#\$alre représentation ("La Prise de Troie") : Karlsruhe, Hoftheater, 6 décembre
1890. 1^{re} représentation ("Les Troyens à Carthage") : Paris, Théâtre-Lyrique, 4 no-
vembre 1863
640 5#\$f#185604####\$i#1858#####
640 0#\$ORévision\$f#1859#####\$i#1860#####
640 0#\$OPremière édition\$f#1862#####
640 6#\$dKarlsruhe\$eHoftheater\$f#18901206#
640 6#\$dParis\$eThéâtre Lyrique\$f#18631104#

EX 9

240 ##\$1200#1\$aSchein\$bJohann Hermann\$f1586-1630\$1230##\$aBeati omnes qui timent
Dominum
300 0#\$aComposé à l'occasion du mariage de Heinrich Höpner et Veronica Jordan
300 0#\$alre exécution : Leipzig, 16 octobre 1620
300 0#\$alre éd. : Leipzig : J. Glück, 1620
640 5#\$f#1620#####\$hMariage de Heinrich Höpner et Veronica Jordan
640 6#\$dLeipzig\$f#16201016#
640 0#\$OPremière édition\$dLeipzig\$f#1620#####

EX 10

240 ##\$1200#1\$aCostanzi\$bGiovanni Battista\$f1704-1778\$1230##\$aCarlo Magno
300 0#\$aFesta teatrale en 3 actes
300 0#\$alre représentation : Rome, Palazzo Ottoboni, octobre 1729, en l'honneur de la
naissance de Louis, dauphin de France
640 6#\$dRome\$ePalazzo Ottoboni\$f#172910####\$hNaissance de Louis, dauphin de France

EX 11

240 ##\$1200#1\$aBianchi\$bFrancesco\$f1752?-1810\$1230##\$a≠NSB≠La ≠NSE≠Villanel-
la rapita
300 0#\$aOpera giocosa en 2 actes, sur un livret de Giovanni Bertati
300 0#\$alre représentation : Venise, Théâtre San Moisè, automne 1783
300 0#\$alre représentation en France : Paris, Théâtre de Monsieur, 15 juin 1789
640 6#\$dVenise\$eThéâtre San Moisè\$f#1783#####\$hautomne
640 6#\$OPremière représentation en France\$dParis\$eThéâtre de Monsieur\$f#17890615#

675 UNIVERSAL DECIMAL CLASSIFICATION (UDC)

Field Definition

This field contains the UDC number or range of numbers associated with an authority access point. The UDC number may be accompanied by terms that describe the UDC number.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)
Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

Data Subfields

- \$a UDC number, single or beginning of a range
The class number as taken from the UDC schedules. Not repeatable.
- \$b UDC number, end of a range
The class number as taken from the UDC schedules. Not repeatable.
- \$c Explanatory terms
Explanatory terms associated with the class number in \$a (and if applicable \$b) as taken from the UDC schedules. Repeatable.
- \$v UDC edition
The edition from which the number in subfield \$a is taken. Not repeatable.
- \$z Language of edition
The language in coded form of the edition from which the number in subfield \$a is taken. For codes see ISO 639-2 Standard, or Appendix A in *UNIMARC Manual: Bibliographic Format*. Not repeatable.

Control Subfields

- \$3 Authority record identifier
Link to classification format record. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The number is taken from the version of the UDC schedules used by the agency preparing the record. UDC is produced in various language versions each of which is revised from time to time and published as a new edition. Each published edition of UDC is derived from the UDC Consortium's Master Reference File.

Examples

EX 1

152 ##\$bnlr_sh

250 ##\$aИонный обмен\$xПрименение в водоочистке

675 ##\$a628.337\$cЭлектрические методы очистки\$v3\$zrus

EX 2

152 ##\$aRCR

200 #1\$aАбдулатипов\$bП. Г.\$gРамазан Гаджимурадович\$f1946-\$cГосударственный
деятель России, доктор филос. наук, профессор

675 ##\$a342.53(470)(092)\$v3\$zrus

676 DEWEY DECIMAL CLASSIFICATION (DDC)**Field Definition**

This field contains the DDC number or range of numbers associated with an authority access point. The DDC number may be accompanied by terms that describe the DDC number.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)

Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a DDC number, single or beginning of a range

The number as taken from the Dewey Decimal Classification schedules. Prime marks are indicated by /. Not repeatable.

\$b DDC number, end of a range

The number as taken from the Dewey Decimal Classification schedules. Prime marks are indicated by /. Not repeatable.

\$c Explanatory terms

Explanatory terms associated with the class number in \$a (and if applicable \$b) as taken from the DDC schedules (EX 1). Repeatable.

\$v DDC edition

The number of the edition used (EX 1, 2). An “a” is added to the number to indicate abridged edition. Not repeatable.

\$z Language of edition

The language, in coded form, of the edition from which the number in subfield \$a is taken (EX 2). For codes see ISO 639-2 Standard, or . Appendix A in *UNIMARC Manual: Bibliographic Format*. Not repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$3 Authority record identifier

Link to classification format record. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The number is entered in subfield \$a in the form prescribed by the schedules used by the agency preparing the record. The number may include prime marks (/), which indicate internationally agreed points at which the number may be truncated. The number should not include extensions used solely to assign a bookmark to an individual item.

Subfield \$z should be used only if the translated version contains differences from the original, e.g., when parts of the schedule have been rewritten to cover local requirements.

Examples

EX 1

250 ##\$aGold
676 ##\$a669.22\$cInterdisciplinary\$v19
676 ##\$a549.23\$cMineralogy\$v19
676 ##\$a553.41\$cEconomic geology\$v19

EX 2

250 ##\$aPhilosophy, parapsychology and occultism
676 ##\$a153.94001\$b153.94999\$v21\$zeng

680 LIBRARY OF CONGRESS CLASSIFICATION (LCC)**Field Definition**

This field contains the LC number or range of numbers associated with an authority access point. The LC number may be accompanied by terms that describe the LC number.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)
Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a LC number, single or beginning of a range

The class number taken from the Library of Congress classification schedules. Not repeatable.

\$b LC number, end of a range

The class number taken from the Library of Congress classification schedules. Not repeatable.

\$c Explanatory terms

Explanatory terms associated with the class number in \$a (and if applicable \$b) as taken from the LC Classification schedules. (EX 2). Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$3 Authority record identifier

Link to classification format record. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

A Library of Congress class number may be applied by any agency in possession of the Library of Congress Classification Schedules.

Examples

EX 1

250 ##\$aScaffolding
680 ##\$aTH5281

EX 2

250 ##\$aString quartet
680 ##\$aML1160\$cHistory
680 ##\$aMT728\$cInstruction and study

686 OTHER CLASSIFICATION NUMBERS

Field Definition

This field contains a class number or range of numbers (from classification systems which are not internationally used but which are widely understood published schemes) associated with an authorized access point. The classification scheme is identified in a subfield \$2. Codes for identification of classification schemes are given in Appendix G of the *UNIMARC Manual: Bibliographic Format*.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)

Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a Class number, single or beginning of a range

The class number taken from the classification scheme. Not repeatable.

\$b Class number, end of a range

The class number applied by the assigning agency. Not repeatable.

\$c Explanatory terms

A subdivision of the class number taken from the classification scheme. Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$2 System code

A code for the classification scheme used in formulating the number. For a list of system codes, see *UNIMARC Manual: Bibliographic Format* Appendix G. Not repeatable.

\$3 Authority record identifier

Link to classification format record. Not repeatable.

Examples

EX 1

686 ##\$2usnlm\$aW1\$bRE359

A U.S. National Library of Medicine class number.

EX 2

686 ##\$2usnal\$a281.9\$bC81A

A U.S. National Agricultural Library class number.

EX 3

152 ##\$aRCR
 200 #1\$aАбдулатипов\$bП. Г.\$gРамазан Гаджимурадович\$f1946-
 \$cГосударственный деятель России, доктор филос. наук, профессор
 686 ##\$2rugasnti\$a10.15
 686 ##\$2rubbk\$a67.99(2Рос)06\$vLBC/PL

EX 4

152 ##\$bnlr_sh
 215 ##\$aЯлта\$xНародное хозяйство\$z1956
 686 ##\$2rubbk\$aУ03(2Р-4Крм-2Я)74\$vLBC/SL

EX 5

152 ##\$bnlr_sh
 240 ##\$1210##\$aСоединенные Штаты Америки\$1230##\$aКонституция\$xИстория
 686 ##\$2rubbk\$aТ3(7США)0-52\$cИстория\$vLBC/SL
 686 ##\$2rubbk\$aX809(7США)1-1\$cПраво\$vLBC/SL

7-- AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT BLOCK

Definition and Scope of Fields

This block contains parallel or alternative language and/or script forms of the access point in the 2-- block and link to a separate record in which the 7-- access point is the primary entity.

The following fields are defined:

- 700 Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script – Personal Name
- 710 Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script – Corporate Body Name
- 715 Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script – Territorial or Geographical Name
- 716 Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script – Trademark
- 717 Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script – Printer/Publisher Device
- 720 Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script – Family Name
- 730 Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script – Title
- 740 Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script – Name/Title
- 743 Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script – Conventional Name/Title for Legal and Religious Texts
- 745 Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script – Name/Collective Title
- 750 Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script – Topical Subject
- 760 Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script – Place and Date of Publication, Performance, Provenance, etc.
- 780 Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script – Form, Genre or Physical Characteristics

Notes on Field Contents

Under certain practices additional parallel forms of the access point, in a language other than that which is the valid form under the Language of Cataloguing specified in field 100, character positions 9-11, may be specially identified and carried in this block. For each parallel access point the language of the catalogue into which the access point fits is recorded in a \$8 subfield.

These fields are also used to record alternate script representations of the 2-- record authorized access point when another record exists for the alternative script access point and its reference structure. For an alternative script access point, a \$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point subfield is added to the 7-- field. (A \$6 Interfield Linking Data subfield is not required since all access points in 7-- fields link to the access point in the 2-- field by definition.) The fields in this block are repeatable to accommodate multiple access points.

The subfields in the 7-- block have the same definitions and specification as the equivalent subfields in the 2-- block, therefore these specifications are not repeated in the field descriptions below.

See Guidelines for Use, (8), Parallel Data and Alternative Script Data for general discussion of these types of data.

Control Subfields

Only the following control subfields may be used in the 7-- fields:

- \$1 Linking Data
- \$2 System Code
- \$4 Relator Code
- \$3 Authority Record Identifier
- \$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access Point
- \$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

700 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – PERSONAL NAME

Field Definition

This field contains a personal name authorized access point that is in another language and/or script form of the 200 access point.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not specified)

Indicator 2 specifies the way the name is entered:

0 Name entered under forename or direct order

1 Name entered under surname

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a	Entry element	Not repeatable.
\$b	Part of name other than entry element	Not repeatable.
\$c	Additions to names other than dates	Repeatable.
\$d	Roman numerals	Not repeatable.
\$f	Dates	Not repeatable.
\$g	Expansion of initials of forename	Not repeatable.
\$4	Relator code	Repeatable.
\$j	Form subdivision	Repeatable.
\$x	Topical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$y	Geographical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$z	Chronological subdivision	Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$2	System code	Not repeatable.
\$3	Authority record identifier	Not repeatable.
\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and the base access point	Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The field contains a personal name formulated in accordance with the descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it, and linked to the form in 200.

Related Fields

200 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME

Examples

EX 1

Record in English language catalogue:

001 e79-392225

100 ##\$a19790723aengy0103####ba0

200 #0\$aVictoria,\$cQueen of Great Britain

700 #0\$3f79-034678\$8frefre\$aVictoria,\$creine de Grande-Bretagne

The language of cataloguing in record ID no. e79-392225 is English. There is a parallel French catalogue record, ID no. f79-034678. See next record.

Record in French language catalogue:

001 f79-034678

100 ##\$a19790723afrey0103####ba0

200 #0\$aVictoria,\$creine de Grande-Bretagne

700 #0\$3e79-392225\$8engeng\$aVictoria,\$cQueen of Great Britain

This is the equivalent record in the French language catalogue. It will be seen that the \$8 in this record corresponds to the 100 in the preceding record. Note also that script is coded neither in the 200 nor 700 using \$7. This is because the script for the whole record is Latin, which is coded in the 100/21-22.

EX 2

Record in Roman script catalogue:

001 23469

100 ##\$a19790723ajpna50#####ba0

200 #1\$7ba0aba0a\$aSuzuki,\$bKenzi

700 #1\$7db0ydb0y\$a[Personal name in Japanese kanji]

This record is in a Roman script catalogue. The script of cataloguing is coded in 100/21-22. The 700 field contains an access point which links to the equivalent record in a Kanji script catalogue. The script of cataloguing and the script of the base access point are both coded in the 700. subfield \$7.

Record in Japanese script catalogue:

001 36298

100 ##\$a19790723ajpny50#####db0

200 #1\$7db0ydb0y\$a[Personal name in Japanese kanji]

700 #1\$7ba0aba0a\$aSuzuki,\$bKenzi

This is the Kanji equivalent of the preceding record. The script of cataloguing is coded in the 100/21-22. This should be in Kanji, but for the purposes of illustration is shown in Roman script. The 700 authorized field contains the linking access point from the equivalent Roman script record.

710 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – CORPORATE BODY NAME

Field Definition

This field contains a corporate body name authorized access point that is in another language and/or script form of the 210 access point. Territorial names followed by a corporate body subdivision are considered corporate body names (field 710); territorial names alone or only with subject subdivisions as additions are considered territorial names (field 715).

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 specifies the kind of corporate body:
The first indicator specifies whether the corporate body is a meeting or not. Meetings include conferences, symposia, etc. If the name of the meeting is a subdivision of the name of a corporate body, the name is regarded as that of a corporate body.

0 Corporate name

1 Meeting

If the source format does not distinguish meeting names from other corporate names, the indicator position should contain the fill character.

Indicator 2 specifies the way the names are entered:
0 Name in inverted form
1 Name entered under place or jurisdiction
2 Name entered under name in direct order

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a	Entry element	Not repeatable.
\$b	Subdivision	Repeatable.
\$c	Addition to name or qualifier	Repeatable.
\$d	Number of meeting and/or number of part of meeting	Not repeatable.
\$e	Location of meeting	Not repeatable.
\$f	Date of meeting	Not repeatable.
\$g	Inverted element	Not repeatable.
\$h	Part of name other than entry element and inverted element	Not repeatable.
\$4	Relator code	Repeatable.
\$j	Form subdivision	Repeatable.
\$x	Topical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$y	Geographical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$z	Chronological subdivision	Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$2	System code	Not repeatable.
\$3	Authority record identifier	Not repeatable.
\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable

Notes on Field Contents

The field contains a corporate body name formulated in accordance with the descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it, and linked to the form in 210.

Related Fields

210 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME

Examples

EX 1

Record in English language catalogue:

001 80-123456

100 ##\$a19800723aengy0103####ba0

210 02\$aNational Library of Canada

710 02\$380-239876\$8frefre\$aBibliothèque nationale du Canada

Record in French language catalogue:

001 80-239876

100 ##\$a19800723afrey0103####ba0

210 02\$aBibliothèque nationale du Canada

710 02\$380-123456\$8engeng\$aNational Library of Canada

715 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME

Field Definition

This field contains a territorial or geographical name authorized access point that is in another language and/or script form of the 215 access point. Territorial names alone or only with subject subdivisions as additions are considered territorial names (field 715); territorial names followed by a corporate body subdivision are considered corporate body names (field 710).

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)

Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a	Entry element	Not repeatable.
\$j	Form subdivision	Repeatable.
\$x	Topical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$y	Geographical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$z	Chronological subdivision	Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$2	System code	Not repeatable.
\$3	Authority record identifier	Not repeatable.
\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The field contains a territorial or geographic name formulated in accordance with the descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it, and linked to the form in 215.

Related Fields

215 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME

Examples

EX 1

Record in German language catalogue:
001 A123456

100 ##\$a19790723agery0103####ba0
215 ##\$aSchweiz
715 ##\$3A234567\$8frefre\$aSuisse
715 ##\$3A345678\$8itaita\$aSvizzera

Record in French language catalogue:

001 A234567
100 ##\$a19790723afrey0103####ba0
215 ##\$aSuisse
715 ##\$3A123456\$8gerger\$aSchweiz
715 ##\$3A345678\$8itaita\$aSvizzera

Record in Italian language catalogue:

001 A345678
100 ##\$a19790723aitay0103####ba0
215 ##\$aSvizzera
715 ##\$3A123456\$8gerger\$aSchweiz
715 ##\$3A234567\$8frefre\$aSuisse

716 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – TRADEMARK

Field Definition

This field contains a trademark authorized access point that is in another language and/or script form of the 216 access point.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)
Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a	Data element	Not repeatable.
\$f	Dates	Not repeatable.
\$c	Qualification	Repeatable.
\$j	Form, genre or physical characteristic subdivision	Repeatable.
\$x	Topical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$y	Geographical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$z	Chronological subdivision	Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$2	System code	Not repeatable.
\$3	Authority record identifier	Not repeatable.
\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The field contains a trademark name formulated in accordance with the descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it, and linked to the form in 216.

Related Fields

216 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TRADEMARK

Examples

EX 1

216 ##\$7ba0yba0a\$8frerus\$aMelodiâ

716 ##\$3<authority record identifier>\$7ca0yca0y\$8rusrus\$aМелодия

717 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – PRINTER/PUBLISHER DEVICE

Field Definition

This field contains a printer/publisher device authorized access point that is in another language and/or script form of the 217 access point.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)

Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a	Printer/publisher device description	Not repeatable.
\$b	Motto	Repeatable.
\$c	Standard citation	Repeatable.
\$d	Size	Not repeatable.
\$f	Date	Not repeatable.
\$g	Iconographic term	Repeatable.
\$j	Form subdivision	Repeatable.
\$x	Topical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$y	Geographical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$z	Chronological subdivision	Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$2	System code	Not repeatable.
\$3	Authority record identifier	Not repeatable.
\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The field contains a printer/publisher device name formulated in accordance with the rules of standard citations which identify the device in use by the agency which created it, and linked to the form in 217.

Related Fields

217 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PRINTER/PUBLISHER DEVICE

720 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – FAMILY NAME

Field Definition

This field contains a family name authorized access point that is in another language and/or script form of the 220 access point.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (undefined)

Indicator 2 blank (undefined)

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a	Entry element	Not repeatable.
\$c	Type of family	Not repeatable.
\$d	Places associated with the family	Repeatable.
\$f	Dates	Not repeatable.
\$4	Relator code	Repeatable.
\$j	Form subdivision	Repeatable.
\$x	Topical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$y	Geographical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$z	Chronological subdivision	Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$2	System code	Not repeatable.
\$3	Authority record identifier	Not repeatable.
\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The field contains a family name formulated in accordance with the descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it, and linked to the access point in 220.

Related Fields

220 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME

Examples

EX 1

220 ##\$aDuecker family

720 ##\$3<authority record identifier>\$aDuecker (famille)

730 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – TITLE

Field Definition

This field contains a title authorized access point that is in another language and/or script form of the 230 access point.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)
Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a	Entry element	Not repeatable.
\$b	General material designation	Repeatable.
\$h	Number of section or part	Repeatable.
\$i	Name of section or part	Repeatable.
\$k	Date of publication	Not repeatable.
\$l	Form subdivision	Not repeatable.
\$m	Language	Not repeatable.
\$n	Miscellaneous information	Repeatable.
\$q	Version (or date of version)	Not repeatable.
\$r	Medium of performance (for music)	Repeatable.
\$s	Numeric designation (for music)	Repeatable.
\$u	Key (for music)	Not repeatable.
\$w	Arranged statement (for music)	Not repeatable.
\$j	Form subdivision	Repeatable.
\$x	Topical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$y	Geographical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$z	Chronological subdivision	Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$2	System code	Not repeatable.
\$3	Authority record identifier	Not repeatable.
\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The field contains a title of a work or work/expression formulated in accordance with the descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the agency which created it, and linked to the form in 230.

Related Fields

230 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE

Examples

EX 1

100 ##\$a19790723aspay0103####ba0

230 ##\$aCrónica de los Reyes de Castilla

730 ##\$386123\$8engeng\$aChronicle of the Kings of Castille

See also field 745.

740 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – NAME/TITLE

Field Definition

This field contains a name/title authorized access point that is in another language and/or script form of the 240 access point. The data are carried in appropriate subfields according to the techniques described under field 240.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)

Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

A) Subfield: Embedded Fields Technique

Data Subfields

\$1	Linking data	Repeatable.
-----	--------------	-------------

Control Subfields

\$2	System code	Not repeatable.
\$3	Authority record identifier	Not repeatable.
\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Each element is coded according to the 2-- field appropriate to the element: 200 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME, 210 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME, 215 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME, or 220 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME for the name; and a 230 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TITLE for the title. The tag, indicators, and data subfields for the name and title are embedded in a field 240, with each preceded by subfield identifier \$1.

When control subfields are needed, they should precede the first \$1 subfields containing embedded data.

B) Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique

Data Subfields

\$a	Name	Not repeatable.
\$t	Title	Not repeatable.
\$j	Form subdivision	Repeatable.
\$x	Topical subdivision	Repeatable.

\$y	Geographical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$z	Chronological subdivision	Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable.

Related Fields

240 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/TITLE

Examples

EX 1

100 ##\$a19790723afrey0103#####ba0

240 ##\$121002\$aUniversité Laval\$1230##\$aRépertoire des cours

740 ##\$34936289\$8engeng\$121002\$aUniversity Laval\$1230##\$aCourse catalogue

743 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS

Field Definition

This field contains a conventional name/title authorized access point for legal and religious texts that is in another language and/or script form of the 243 access point.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

- Indicator 1 blank (not defined)
Indicator 2 specifies the form of conventional name/title:
1 Name entered under country or other geographical name
Used for jurisdictional geographical names.
2 Name entered under other form
Used for church names.

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a	Entry Element	Not repeatable.
\$b	Subdivision	Repeatable.
\$c	Addition to name or qualifier	Repeatable.
\$e	Name of the other party	Not repeatable.
\$f	Date of legal issue or version, or date of the signing	Repeatable.
\$i	Name of section or part	Repeatable.
\$l	Form subdivision	Repeatable.
\$n	Miscellaneous information	Repeatable
\$t	Conventional title	Not repeatable.
\$j	Form subdivision	Repeatable.
\$x	Topical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$y	Geographical subdivision	Repeatable
\$z	Chronological subdivision	Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$2	System code	Not repeatable.
\$3	Authority record identifier	Not repeatable.
\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable

Notes on Field Contents

The field contains a conventional name/title for legal and religious texts formulated in accordance with the descriptive cataloguing rules or subject system in use by the which created it, and linked to the form in 243.

Related Fields

243 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CONVENTIONAL NAME/TITLE FOR LEGAL
AND RELIGIOUS TEXTS

745 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – NAME/COLLECTIVE TITLE

Field Definition

This field contains a name/collective title authorized access point that is in another language and/or script form of the 245 access point. The data are carried in appropriate subfields according to the techniques described under field 245.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)

Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

A) Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique

Data Subfields

\$1	Linking data	Repeatable.
-----	--------------	-------------

Control Subfields

\$2	System code	Not repeatable.
\$3	Authority record identifier	Not repeatable.
\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

Each element is coded according to the 2-- field appropriate to the element: 200 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PERSONAL NAME, 210 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – CORPORATE BODY NAME, 215 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TERRITORIAL OR GEOGRAPHICAL NAME, or 220 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FAMILY NAME for the name; and a 235 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – COLLECTIVE TITLE for the collective title. The tag, indicators, and data for the name and title of these are embedded in a field 245, with each preceded by subfield identifier \$1.

When control subfields are needed, they should precede the first \$1 subfields containing embedded data.

B) Subfields: Standard Subfields Technique

Data Subfields

\$a	Name	Not repeatable.
\$t	Title	Not repeatable.
\$j	Form subdivision	Repeatable.
\$x	Topical subdivision	Repeatable.

Format – 7-- Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script Block

\$y	Geographical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$z	Chronological subdivision	Repeatable.

Control Subfield

\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable.

Related Fields

245 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – NAME/COLLECTIVE TITLE

.

750 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – TOPICAL SUBJECT

Field Definition

This field contains a topical subject authorized access point or an authorized subject category access point that is in another language and/or script form of the 250 access point.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)

Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a	Topical subject	Not repeatable.
\$n	Subject category code	Repeatable.
\$m	Subject category subdivision code	Repeatable.
\$j	Form subdivision	Repeatable.
\$x	Topical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$y	Geographical subdivision	Repeatable.
\$z	Chronological subdivision	Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$2	System code	Not repeatable.
\$3	Authority record identifier	Not repeatable.
\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The field contains a topical subject or a subject category formulated in accordance with the subject system or the system of subject categories in use by the agency which created it, and linked to the access point in 250.

Related fields

250 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – TOPICAL SUBJECT

Examples

EX 1

Record in English language catalogue:

100 ##\$a19790723aengy0103####ba0

250 ##\$aCivil laws\$yQuebec (Province)\$jHandbooks, manuals, etc.

750 ##\$8frefre\$aDroit civil\$yQuébec (Province)\$jGuides, manuels, etc.

Record in French language catalogue:

100 ##\$a19790723afrey0103#####ba0

250 ##\$aDroit civil\$yQuébec (Province)\$jGuides, manuels, etc.

750 ##\$8engeng\$aCivil laws\$yQuebec (Province)\$jHandbooks, manuals, etc.

760 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION, PERFORMANCE, PROVENANCE, ETC.

Field Definition

This field contains a place and date of publication, etc. authorized access point that is in another language and/or script form of the 260 access point.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (undefined)
Indicator 2 blank (undefined)

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a	Country (nation state)	Not repeatable.
\$b	State or province, etc.	Not repeatable.
\$c	Intermediate political jurisdiction	Repeatable.
\$d	City, etc.	Not repeatable.
\$e	Venue	Repeatable.
\$f	Date	Repeatable.
\$g	Season	Not repeatable.
\$h	Occasion	Not repeatable.
\$i	Final date	Not repeatable.
\$k	Subsection of city, etc.	Repeatable.
\$m	Other geographical regions or features	Repeatable.
\$n	Extraterrestrial areas	Repeatable.
\$o	Geographical areas such as world, hemisphere, continent	Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$2	System code	Not repeatable.
\$3	Authority record identifier	Not repeatable.
\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The field contains a place and date of publication, etc. name formulated in accordance with the rules in use by the agency which created it, and linked to the form in 260.

Related Fields

260 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – PLACE AND DATE OF PUBLICATION,
PERFORMANCE, PROVENANCE, ETC.

780 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Field Definition

This field contains a form, genre and/or physical characteristics authorized access point that is in another language and/or script form of the 280 access point.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)
Indicator 2 specifies the type of the entity:
 # Not defined
 0 Work
 2 Manifestation
 3 Item

Subfields

Data Subfields

\$a	Entry Element	Not repeatable.
\$j	Form Subdivision	Repeatable.
\$x	Topical Subdivision	Repeatable.
\$y	Geographical Subdivision	Repeatable.
\$z	Chronological Subdivision	Repeatable.

Control Subfields

\$2	System code	Not repeatable.
\$3	Authority record identifier	Not repeatable.
\$7	Script of cataloguing and script of the base access point	Not repeatable.
\$8	Language of cataloguing and language of the base access point	Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field contains a form, genre or physical characteristics formulated in accordance with the provisions of the system of form access points in use by the agency which created it, and linked to the form in 280.

Related Fields

280 AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINT – FORM, GENRE OR PHYSICAL
CHARACTERISTICS

Examples

EX 1

152 ##\$brbpap
280 ##\$aMarbled papers
480 ##\$aMarble papers
580 ##\$g\$a[Surface applications of paper]
580 ##\$h\$aAntique marbled papers
580 ##\$h\$aBritish marbled papers
580 ##\$h\$aCocoa marbled papers
780 ##\$8frefre\$aPapiers marbrés

In the ACRL Thesaurus of Paper Terms, "Marbled papers" is the preferred form. In a bilingual catalogue, the term is translated into French.

EX 2

152 ##\$bgsafd
280 ##\$aAdventure stories
480 ##\$aSuspense novels
480 ##\$aSwashbucklers
580 ##\$aThrillers
580 ##\$h\$aDetective and mystery stories
580 ##\$h\$aPicaresque literature
580 ##\$h\$aRobinsonades
580 ##\$h\$aRomantic suspense novels
780 ##\$8frefre\$aHistoires d'aventure

8-- SOURCE INFORMATION BLOCK

Definition and Scope of Fields

This block contains information concerning the agencies responsible for the record and cataloguer's notes recorded by those agencies. Cataloguer's notes are primarily intended to guide cataloguers and thus are usually not written in a form suitable to public display. Notes intended for public display are in the 3-- NOTES BLOCK.

The following fields are defined:

- 801 Originating Source
- 810 Source Data Found
- 815 Source Data Not Found
- 820 Usage or Scope Information
- 825 Example Under Note
- 830 General Cataloguer's Note
- 835 Deleted Access Point Information
- 836 Replaced Access Point Information
- 856 Electronic Location and Access
- 886 Data Not Converted from Source Format

Occurrence

Field 801 is mandatory. All other fields in the 8-- block are optional. It is recommended that all notes in a source record suitable for international exchange be entered in the UNIMARC record.

Notes on Field Contents

Punctuation should be entered as in the source format.

Control Subfields

The following control subfield may be used in the 8-- fields:

- \$2 System Code

801 ORIGINATING SOURCE

Field Definition

This field identifies the agency responsible for the creation of the record and the date of the entry. It is repeatable to show the transcribing, modifying or issuing agency. The date for new records is the date of the creation of the entry. For revised records, the date recorded is the date of the latest revision.

Occurrence

Mandatory in the case of exchange of bibliographic data. Repeatable for each agency function reported.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)

Indicator 2 specifies the function performed by the agency:

- 0 Original cataloguing agency
- 1 Transcribing agency
- 2 Modifying agency
- 3 Issuing agency

Subfields

\$a Country

The country of the issuing agency in 2 character form. The country is coded according to ISO 3166. The full list of codes will be found in the *UNIMARC Manual: Bibliographic Format, Appendix B*. Not repeatable.

\$b Agency

It is recommended that the agency be identified according to the international standard ISO 15511:2003 *International Standard Identifier for Libraries and Related Organizations (ISIL)*. In this case, the whole ISIL, including its first sequence (country code or other prefix), is entered in the \$b subfield.

Alternatively, it is possible to use the code from the *MARC Code List for Organisations*. Otherwise, the full name of the agency or a national code may be used. The displaying of data in clear form (full name, well-known acronym) is recommended in OPACs and union catalogues. A matching between the code and the name to be displayed should be established in an appropriate reference list or tool. Not repeatable.

\$c Date of latest transaction

The date of latest transaction should be recorded according to ISO 8601, i.e., in the form YYYYMMDD. Not repeatable.

\$2 System code

The name of the format used for the machine-readable record. See *UNIMARC Manual: Bibliographic Format, Appendix H* for codes. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

In many cases the same agency will have carried out some or all indicated functions; however the field should be repeated only when there are changes to transaction dates, cataloguing rules or formats; where there are no changes only the earliest occurrence of the field should be included.

Related Fields

RECORD LABEL, Encoding Level, (character position 17)

005 VERSION IDENTIFIER

100 GENERAL PROCESSING DATA, Date Entered on File (character positions 0-7)

The date in field 100 may be the same as the transcription date but should be repeated in field 801.

Examples

EX 1

801 #0\$aUS\$bDLC\$c19800516

EX 2

801 #3\$aGB\$bbl\$c19831121

EX 3

801 #0\$aFR\$bBnF\$c20061012

An authority record for a printer/publisher created and issued by the Bibliothèque nationale de France.

EX 4

801 #0\$aFR\$bFR-693836101\$c20070215

An authority record created by the Bibliothèque municipale de Lyon. The whole ISIL identifier with its two components is entered in \$b. The library identifier “693836101” in \$b refers to the RCR code (RCR: Répertoire des Centres de Ressource), the national standard used in France http://ccfr.bnf.fr/rnbcd_visu/framevisu.jsp?accueil=1

EX 5

801 #0\$aRU\$bNLR\$c19961109

810 SOURCE DATA FOUND

Field Definition

This field contains a citation to a reference source when information about the access point was found. The first 810 field usually contains the citation for the bibliographic work for the cataloguing of which the access point has been established.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)
Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Citation

The citation for a published work or a description of any source or action that provided information about the access point. The information provided is sufficient to identify both the work and the location within the work. Not repeatable.

\$b Information found

A statement of the information found in the source cited in \$a. Not repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field is not mandatory, but it is recommended that source information is cited whenever it is available.

Related Fields

2-- AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINTS
4-- VARIANT ACCESS POINTS
5-- RELATED ACCESS POINTS
7-- AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINTS IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT

Examples

EX 1

200 #1\$aAvery,\$bHarold Eric
400 #1\$aAvery,\$bH.E.
810 ##\$aHis Advanced physical chemistry calculations, 1971: t.p.\$b(H. E. Avery, B. Sc.,
Ph.D., Dept. of Chem., Liverpool Polytechnic)

EX 2

152 ##\$aACR2
215 ##\$aCalanques, Massif des (France)

810 ##\$aDict. géogr. de la France\$b(Calanques (les), nom donné au littoral méditerranéen du département des Bouches-du-Rhône, entre Marseille et Cassis)

EX 3

200 #1\$aHailsham of Saint Marylebone,\$bQuintin Hogg,\$cBaron

810 ##\$aWho's Who

EX 4

152 ##\$aRCR

210 12\$aУральский горнопромышленный форум\$f2006\$eЕкатеринбург

810 ##\$aГорное дело. Оборудование. Технологии : I межрегиональная специализированная выставка и научно-техническая конференция, Екатеринбург, 31 января – 3 февраля 2006: официальный каталог, тезисы конференции /Уральский горнопромышленный форум. – Екатеринбург, 2006810 ##\$a<http://kosk.ru/news/1611>

815 SOURCE DATA NOT FOUND

Field Definitions

This field contains the citations for consulted reference sources in which no information about the access point was found.

Occurrence

Optional. Not repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)
Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Citations

A citation for a published work or a description of any source that provided no information about the access point. The subfield is repeated for each separate source cited.

Notes on Field Contents

This field is not mandatory, but it is recommended that sources are cited wherever possible.

Related fields

2-- AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINTS

4-- VARIANT ACCESS POINTS

5-- RELATED ACCESS POINTS

7-- AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINTS IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT

Examples

EX 1

200 #1\$aJones,\$bA. Wesley

815 ##\$aDir. Amer. schol., 1974;\$aNational faculty dir., 1979;\$aAmer. men/women sci., soc. and beh. sci., 1978;\$aWWA., 1978-79

EX 2

240 ##\$aCalanques (France)

815 ##\$aWeb. geog. dict., 1972;\$aE. Brit. micro.;\$aCol. Lipp. gaz.;\$aTimes atlas, 1955

EX 3

200 #1\$aАландский\$bП. И.\$gПавел Иванович\$f1844-1883

810 ##\$aКулаковский Ю.А. Поминки по П.И.А. – Киев, 1884\$bАландский Павел Иванович 1844-1883 – историк

815 #1\$aСИЭ\$aБСЭ

820 USAGE OR SCOPE INFORMATION

Field Definition

This field contains information limiting the use of the 2-- record access point and/or differentiating persons or bodies with similar names.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)

Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Note text

The text of the note. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

This field is not mandatory, but it is recommended that a note is made wherever necessary to avoid confusion between similar access points.

Related Fields

2-- AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINTS

4-- VARIANT ACCESS POINTS

5-- RELATED ACCESS POINTS

7-- AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINTS IN OTHER LANGUAGE AND/OR SCRIPT

Examples

EX 1

200 #1\$aSmithe,\$bSam

820 ##\$aNot to be confused with Smith, Sam

EX 2

200 #1\$aLafontaine,\$bJacques,\$f1944-

820 ##\$aNe pas confondre avec l'auteur né en 1933.

EX 3

250 ##\$aHoly Year

820 ##\$aHere are entered works on the holy or jubilee years proclaimed by the popes. For special holy years (regular or extraordinary) add date, e.g., Holy Year, 1925

EX 4

152 ##\$bnlr_sh

250 ##\$aКомпьютерные игры

820 ##\$aДанной ПР индексируются документы аналогичные: 2003-7/5654

Компьютерные игры от А до Я : Секреты, коды, пароли. – СПб., 2003.

825 EXAMPLE UNDER NOTE

Field Definition

This field is used in a record to indicate that the access point in the 2-- field has been used as an example or has been cited in a note in another record.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)
Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Note text

The 2-- block access point of the record in which an established subject or authorized subdivision is cited. Not repeatable.

Related Fields

2-- AUTHORIZED ACCESS POINTS

Examples

EX 1

210 02\$aLeague of Nations\$xOfficials and employees
825 ##\$aExample under reference from Officials and employees
825 ##\$aNote under Public officers

EX 2

250 ##\$aJudges\$xTravel regulations
825 ##\$aExample under reference from Travel regulations.

EX 3

Record 1
240 ##\$1200#1\$aГорький\$bМ.\$gМаксим\$f1868 – 1936\$1230##\$aДетство
305 1#\$aСм. также под названиями других частей, например:
\$bГорький,Максим,1868- 1936 – В людях

Record 2
240 ##\$1200#1\$aГорький\$bМ.\$gМаксим\$f1868 – 1936\$1230##\$aВ людях
825 ##\$aИспользуется как пример в записи: Горький, Максим, 1868 – 1936. Детство

830 GENERAL CATALOGUER'S NOTE

Field Definition

This field is used to record biographical, historical, or other information about the access point.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)

Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Note text

The text of the note. Repeatable.

Notes on Field Contents

The data may include references to specific rules applied, notes justifying the choice of form of access point, etc. Such data could also appear as part of other fields, e.g., 810 SOURCE DATA FOUND.

Examples

EX 1

200 #1\$aKorman,\$bGerd

830 ##\$ab. 1928;\$aPhD

EX 2

200 #1\$aOtter\$bA.A. den\$g(Andy Albert den),\$f1941-

830 ##\$aACR2 22.4A. Name established according to author's preference.

EX 3

152 ##\$aRCR

210 02\$a≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠Путь≠NSB≠"≠NSE≠, религиозно-философская группа\$cМосква, 1910-1919

830 ##\$aВ это нео-славянофильское об-ние входили ведущие идеологи русского христианско-либерального национализма – Н.А.Бердяев, С.Н.Булгаков, М.О.Гершензон, В.И.Иванов, Е.Н.Трубецкой, П.А.Флоренский и др.

835 DELETED ACCESS POINT INFORMATION

Field Definition

This field is used to record why the access point in the 2-- is being deleted from an authority file. It appears in a record in which Record Label, Record Status (character position 5), contains value d, deleted record.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)
Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Note text
An explanatory text note. Repeatable.

\$b Replacement access point
The access point(s) which have replaced the deleted access point in the 2--. Repeatable.

\$d Date of the transaction
The date of the transaction in the form YYYYMMDD. Mandatory if field is used. Not repeatable.

Related Fields

RECORD LABEL, Record Status (character position 5 = d (deleted record))

Notes on Field Contents

The date of transaction in subfield \$d should be expressed as eight digits in the form YYYYMMDD.

Examples

EX 1

Record Label, character position 5 = d (deleted record)
250 ##\$aOrphans and orphan-asylums
835 ##\$aThis access point has been replaced by the access points\$bOrphans and Orphanages\$d20001017.

EX 2

152 ##\$aRCR
210 02\$aАкадемия экон. безопасности\$cМосква
835 ##\$aЗаголовок заменен на:\$bАкадемия экономической безопасности МВД России\$d20070725

836 REPLACED ACCESS POINT INFORMATION

Field Definition

This field is used to record why the access point in the 2XX is being replaced from an authority file. It appears in a record in which Record Label, Record Status (character position 5), contains value c (corrected record) or n (new record).

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable

Indicators

Indicator 1 blank (not defined)

Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$b Replaced access point

The superseded access point. Mandatory when field is used. Not repeatable.

\$d Date of the transaction

The date of the transaction in the form YYYYMMDD. Mandatory when field is used. Not repeatable.

Related Fields

RECORD LABEL, Record Status (character position 5 = c (corrected record) or n (new record))

Examples

EX 1

Record Label, character position 5 = c (corrected record)

250 ##\$aOrphelinats

836 ##\$bOrphelins et orphelinats\$d19930629

EX 2

Record Label, character position 5 = n (new record)

200 #1\$aDe Clerck\$bCharles

836 ##\$bClerck, Charles de\$d19871125

EX 3

Record Label, character position 5 = c (corrected record)

250 ##\$aГород\$xХудожественная литература

836 ##\$bГород в художественной литературе\$d20040701

856 ELECTRONIC LOCATION AND ACCESS

Field Definition

This field contains the information required to locate an electronic resource. The field may be used in an authority record to provide supplementary information available electronically about the entity for which the record was created. The information identifies the electronic location containing the resource or from which it is available. It also contains information to retrieve the resource by the access method identified in the first indicator position. It can be used to generate notes relating to mode of access.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable when the location data elements vary (subfields \$a, \$b, \$d) and when more than one access method may be used. It is also repeatable whenever the electronic file-name varies (subfield \$f), except when a single intellectual item is divided into different parts for online storage or retrieval.

Indicators

- Indicator 1 specifies the access method:
- # No information provided
 - 0 Email
 - 1 FTP
 - 2 Remote login (Telnet)
 - 3 Dial-up
 - 4 HTTP
 - 7 Method specified in subfield \$y
- Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Host name. Repeatable.

\$b Access number

The access number is associated with a host. It can contain the Internet Protocol (IP) numeric address if the item is an Internet resource, or a telephone number if dial-up access is provided through a telephone line. This data may change frequently and may be generated by the system, rather than statically stored. Subfield \$b may be repeated if all the other information in the field applies. A telephone number is recorded as follows: [country code]-[area code]-[telephone number]. Example: 49-69-15251140 (a number in Frankfurt, Germany); 1-202-7076237 (a number in the U.S., Washington, D.C.). If an extension is applicable, include it after the telephone number preceded by “x”. Example: 1-703-3589800x515 (telephone number with extension). Repeatable.

\$c Compression information. Repeatable.

\$d Path. Repeatable.

- \$e** Date and hour of consultation and access
The time, in the form YYYYMMDDHHMM, at which the electronic item was last accessed. Not repeatable.
- \$f** Electronic name
The electronic name of a file as it exists in the directory/subdirectory indicated in subfield \$d on the host identified in subfield \$a. Subfield \$f may be repeated if a single logical file has been divided into parts and stored under different names. In this case, the separate parts should constitute a single bibliographic item. In all other cases, a file that may be retrieved under different filenames contains multiple occurrences of field 856, each with its corresponding electronic name in subfield \$f. A filename may include wildcard characters (e.g., "*" or "?") if applicable, with a note in subfield \$z explaining how files are named. NOTE: Filenames may be case sensitive for some systems. This subfield may also contain the name of the electronic publication or conference. Repeatable.
- \$g** Uniform Resource Name
The URN, which provides a globally unique location independent identifier. Repeatable.
- \$h** Processor of request
The username, or processor of the request; generally the data which precedes the at sign ("@" in the host address. Not repeatable.
- \$i** Instruction
An instruction or command needed for the remote host to process a request. Repeatable.
- \$j** Bits per second
The lowest and highest number of bits (binary units) of data that can be transmitted per second when connected to a host. The syntax for recording the number of bits per second (BPS) should be: [Lowest BPS]-[Highest BPS]. If only lowest given: [Lowest BPS]-. If only highest given: -[Highest BPS]. Not repeatable.
- \$k** Password
Used to record general-use passwords, and should not contain passwords requiring security. Not repeatable.
- \$l** Logon/login
General-use logon/login strings which do not require special security. Not repeatable.
- \$m** Contact for access assistance. Repeatable.
- \$n** Name of location of host in subfield \$a. Not repeatable.
- \$o** Operating system
For information, the operating system used by the host specified in subfield \$a is indicated in this subfield. Not repeatable.

\$p	Port
	The portion of the address that identifies a process or service in the host. Not repeatable.
\$q	Electronic format type
	Contains an identification of the electronic format type, which determines how data are transferred through a network. Usually, a text file can be transferred as character data which generally restricts the text to characters in the ASCII (American National Standard Code for Information Interchange) character set (i.e., the basic Latin alphabet, digits 0-9, a few special characters, and most punctuation marks). Text files with characters outside of the ASCII set, or non-textual data (e.g., computer programs, image data) must be transferred using another file transfer mode, usually binary mode. Electronic format type may be taken from lists such as registered Internet Media types (MIME types). Not repeatable.
\$r	Settings
	The settings used for transferring data. Included in settings are: 1) Number Data Bits (the number of bits per character); 2) Number Stop Bits (the number of bits to signal the end of a byte); and 3) Parity (the parity checking technique used). The syntax of these elements is: [Parity]-[Number of Data Bits]-[Number of Stop Bits]. If only the parity is given, the other elements of settings and their related hyphens are omitted (i.e., [Parity]). If one of the other two elements is given, the hyphen for the missing element is recorded in its proper position (i.e., [Parity]-[Number of Stop Bits] or [Parity]-[Number of Data Bits]-). The values for parity are: O (Odd), E (Even), N (None), S (Space), and M (Mark). Not repeatable.
\$s	File size
	The size of the file as stored under the filename indicated in subfield \$f. It is generally expressed in terms of 8-bit bytes (octets). It may be repeated in cases where the filename is repeated and directly follows the subfield \$f to which it applies. This information is not given for journals, since field 856 relates to the entire title, not to particular issues. Repeatable.
\$t	Terminal emulation. Repeatable.
\$u	Uniform Resource Locator
	The Uniform Resource Locator (URL), which provides electronic access data in a standard syntax. This data can be used for automated access to an electronic item using one of the Internet protocols. Field 856 is structured to allow the creation of a URL by combining data from other 856 subfields. Subfield \$u may be used instead of those separate subfields or in addition to them. Not repeatable.
\$v	Hours access method available
	The hours that access to an electronic resource is available at the location indicated in this field. Repeatable
\$w	Record control number. Repeatable.
\$x	Nonpublic note. Repeatable.

\$y Access method

The access method when the first indicator position contains value 7 (Method specified in subfield \$y). This subfield may include access methods other than the main TCP/IP protocols specified in the first indicator. The data in this subfield corresponds with the access schemes specified in Uniform Resource Locators (URL) (RFC 1738), a product of the Uniform Resource Identifiers Working Group of the IETF. The Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA) maintains a registry of URL schemes and defines the syntax and use of new schemes. Not repeatable.

\$z Public note. Repeatable.**Notes on Field Contents**

The information contained in this field is sufficient to allow for the electronic transfer of a file, subscription to an electronic journal, or logon to an electronic resource. In some cases, only unique data elements are recorded which allow the user to access a locator table on a remote host containing the remaining information needed to access the item.

Examples**EX 1**

200 #1\$aRussell,\$bBertrand,\$f1872-1970
856 4#\$uhttp://plato.stanford.edu/entries/russell/russell.jpeg

The electronic resource is available by http.

EX 2

240 ##\$1200#0\$aLeonardo,\$cda Vinci,\$f1452-1519\$1230##\$aMona Lisa
856 4#\$uhttp://sunsite.unc.edu/wm/paint/auth/vinci/joconde/
856 4#\$uhttp://sunsite.unc.edu/wm/paint/auth/vinci/joconde/jpg

There are two electronic resources. The first is a description, the second is an image.

EX 3

210 02\$aLibrary of Congress.\$bCopyright Office
856 4#\$uhttp://lcweb.loc.gov/copyright

EX 4

210 12\$aInternational Conference on the Principles and Future Development of AACR2
856 4#\$uhttp://www.nlc-bnc.ca/jsc/

EX 5

250 ##\$aPresidents' spouses\$zUnited States
856 4#\$ahttp://www.firstladies.com

886 DATA NOT CONVERTED FROM SOURCE FORMAT

Field Definition

This field contains data for which there is no specific UNIMARC field. It is used when an agency is converting records from another format and wishes to retain elements in fields which have no equivalent.

Occurrence

Optional. Repeatable.

Indicators

Indicator 1 specifies the type of field:
0 Record Label
1 Variable control field (0-- fields without indicators or subfields)
2 Variable data field (010-999 fields)

Indicator 2 blank (not defined)

Subfields

\$a Tag of the source format field

This subfield will not be present if Indicator 1 has the value 0. Not repeatable. This subfield can be used only once with the value Tag of the Source Format Field. All other \$a subfields in this field have the values assigned by the field of the source format.

\$b Indicators and subfields of the source format field

This subfield will contain the indicators, subfield identifiers and subfields of the original field in their original order. Not repeatable. This subfield can be used only once with the value Indicators and Subfields of the Source Format Field. All other \$b subfields in this field have the values assigned by the field of the source format.

\$2 System code

The name of the format used for the machine-readable record. See Appendix H in *UNIMARC Manual: Bibliographic Format* for codes. Not repeatable.

Examples

EX 1

886 2#\$2usmarc\$a042\$b##\$alc

There is no equivalent in UNIMARC for USMARC's Authentication Code. There are only three true subfield identifiers in the field – the \$2, the first \$a and the first \$b.

9-- NATIONAL USE BLOCK

Definition and Scope of Fields

This block is reserved for national use by agencies where UNIMARC is the basis of the domestic format. It is recommended that fields in this block be excluded from international exchange tapes. In cases of difficulty, it would be a matter for international agreement as to whether particular types of data should be held in a local field.

Agencies using this block may if they wish come to an agreement over common use of fields; but this is optional.

Notes on Field Contents

These fields may contain any information which is of local, as opposed to international, importance.

Related Fields, Indicators, and Subfields

All -9- and --9 fields throughout the format are reserved for national and local use; their definitions and indicator and subfield values remain undefined by the Permanent UNIMARC Committee. This is also true of indicator value 9 and subfield \$9.

APPENDIX L: COMPLETE EXAMPLES

Personal names

Example 1

Record 1:

Record status – n

Type of record – x

Type of entity – a

Encoding level – #

```
001  A369875
005  19810715164759.9
100  ##$a19810715aengy0103####ba0
101  ##$aeng
102  ##$aUK
120  ##$aba
152  ##$AACR2
200  #1$aStewart,$bJ.I.M.
500  #1$0For works written under his real name see$aInnes,$bMichael$3B329638
801  #0$aUK$bBL$c19810629
810  ##$aWho's Who
```

Record 2:

Record status – n

Type of record – x

Type of entity – a

Encoding level – #

```
001  B329638
005  19810715164759.1
100  ##$a19810716aengy0103####ba0
101  ##$aeng
102  ##$aUK
120  ##$aba
152  ##$AACR2
200  #1$aInnes,$bMichael
500  #1$0For works written under his pseudonym see$aStewart,$bJ.I.M.$3A369875
801  #0$aUK$bBL$c19810629
810  ##$aWho's Who
```

Example 2

```
Label  ?????nx##a22????###45##
001  frBN009103197
005  19930727230134.6
100  ##$a19930723afrey0103####ba0
101  ##$aund
102  ##$aIT
106  ##$a1
```

120 ##\$aba
 152 ##\$aAFNOR Z 44-061
 200 #1\$8freita\$aNicolini da Sabbio\$bDomenico\$f15..-160.?\$cimprimeur-libraire
 300 0#\$aA publié également sous la raison : "Ad signum Seminantis" ("al segno del Seminante") entre 1572 et 1575
 300 0#\$aEn 1559-1560, travaille en association avec son frère Cornelio Nicolini da Sabbio
 340 ##\$aVenezia, 1557-1605?. In contrada San Giulian. Al segno del Seminante
 340 ##\$aDominus illuminatio mea et salus mea, quem timebo ? Prudentia negotium non Fortuna ducat. Nisi qui legitime certaverit
 400 #1\$8freita\$aNicolini\$bDomenico\$f15..-160.?\$cimprimeur-libraire
 400 #1\$8frelat\$aNicolinis\$bDominicus de\$f15..-160.?\$cimprimeur-libraire
 400 #1\$8freita\$aNicolino\$bDomenico\$f15..-160.?\$cimprimeur-libraire
 801 #0\$aFR\$bBN\$c19990706
 810 ##\$aPastorello
 810 ##\$aCosenza\$bdates d'activité 1550-1625
 810 ##\$aBorsa
 810 ##\$aSTC Italian books, 1601-1700
 810 ##\$aAscarelli, Menato

Example 3

Label ???cx##a22????###45##
 001 frBN001502792
 005 19910909141200.3
 100 ##\$a19850419afrey0103####ba0
 101 ##\$agrc
 102 ##\$aXX
 106 ##\$a1
 120 ##\$aba
 152 ##\$aAFNOR Z 44-061
 200 #0\$8frefre\$aÉtienne d'Athènes
 330 0#\$aNe pas confondre avec Stephanus Alexandrinus, du Ier siècle, commentateur d'Aristote
 340 0#\$aMédecin et philosophe né à Athènes (?), ayant enseigné à Alexandrie et auteur de commentaires sur les oeuvres d'Hippocrate et de Galien
 400 #0\$8frelat\$aStephanus medicus
 400 #0\$8freeng\$aStephanus of Athens
 400 #0\$8freger\$aStephanos von Athen
 400 #0\$8frefre\$aStephanus d'Athènes
 400 #0\$8frelat\$aStephanus Alexandrinus\$f0550?-0650?
 400 #0\$8frelat\$aÉtienne d'Alexandrie\$f0550?-0650?
 700 #0\$8latlat\$aStephanus Atheniensis
 801 #0\$aFR\$bBN\$c19990224
 810 ##\$aCommentary on Hippocrates' Aphorisms, sections I-II / Stephanus of Athens ; text and translation by Leendert G. Westerink = Stephani Atheniensis In Hippocratis aphorismos commentaria I-II / ed. et in linguam Anglicam vertit Leendert G. Westerink, 1985
 810 ##\$aBibliotheca scriptorum classicorum, 1880-1882\$bStephanus Alexandrinus
 810 ##\$aCatalogus translationum et commentariorum / ed. P. O. Kristeller, 1960-\$bStephanus Alexandrinus
 810 ##\$aBN Cat. gén. : Stephanus d'Athènes

Example 4

Label 00000nx##a2200000###45##
 001 930721063
 100 ## \$a19930721ahrvy0103####ba0
 152 ## \$aPPIAK
 200 #0 \$aTypographus operis "Martialis 1480"
 300 0# \$aNije moguće utvrditi pravo ime tiskara
 340 0# \$aTiskar, djelovao u Veneciji oko 1480.
 400 #0 \$aTypographus operis Martial
 400 #1 \$aTip. de Martialis
 801 #0 \$aHR\$bNSK
 810 ## \$aBorsa. Clavis, sv. 1, str. 329
 810 ## \$aHain 10814

Example 5

Record 1: Pseudonym

Label 00301cx##a2200109###45##
 001 1118414
 100 ##\$a20030723apory0103####ba0
 101 ##\$apor
 102 ##\$aPT
 106 ##\$a0
 152 ##\$aRPC
 200 #1\$aGedeão,\$bAntônio,\$cpseud.
 305 0#\$aPara a obra científica, ver também\$bCarvalho, Rómulo de, 1906-1997
 340 ##\$aPoeta. Romancista
 400 #1\$aCarvalho,\$bRómulo Vasco da Gama de
 500 #1\$5f0\$aCarvalho,\$bRómulo de,\$f1906-1997
 550 ##\$5g\$aPoetas portugueses\$zSéc. 20
 675 ##\$a821.134.3-1Gedeão, António.09\$vBN\$zpor
 675 ##\$a929Gedeão, António\$vBN\$zpor
 801 #0\$aPT\$bBN\$c20060105
 810 ##\$aLexicoteca

Record 2: Real name

Label 00511cx##a2200169###45##
 001 32195
 100 ##\$a19911003apory0103####ba0
 101 ##\$apor
 102 ##\$aPT
 120 ##\$aba
 152 ##\$aRPC
 200 #1\$aCarvalho,\$bRómulo de,\$f1906-1997
 305 0#\$aPara a obra literária, ver também\$bGedeão, António, pseud.
 340 ##\$aHistoriador. Lic. Ciências Físico-Químicas. Professor
 400 #1\$aCarvalho,\$bRómulo de
 400 #1\$aCarvalho,\$bRómulo Vasco da Gama de
 500 #1\$5e0\$aGedeão,\$bAntónio,\$cpseud.
 801 #0\$aPT\$bBN\$c19980923
 810 ##\$aLexicoteca

Example 6

Record status – n

Type of record – x

Type of entity – a

Encoding level – #

```

001  RU\NLR\AUTH\7723538
005  20050221133443.0
100  ##$a20050221arusy50#####ca0
101  ##$arus
102  ##$aRU$aFR
106  ##$a0$b1$c0
120  ##$aaa
152  ##$aRCR
200  #0$aМаревна$f1892-1984
300  0#$aМаревна – придуманный М.Горьким псевдоним, под которым она известна
    во всем мире. Настоящее имя – Мария Брониславовна Воробьева-Стебельская.
340  ##$bРусская художница XX в. (живописец, график, скульптор), автор мемуа-
    ров$aЭмигрировала во Францию
400  #0$5z$aМарья Маревна$спсевд.$f1892-1984
400  #1$5f$aВоробьева-Стебельская$bМ.Б.$f1892-1984$gМария Брониславовна
400  #1$5f$aВоробьева$bМ.Б.$f1892-1984$gМария Брониславовна
400  #1$5f$aСтебельская$bМ.Б.$f1892-1984$gМария Брониславовна
801  #0$aRU$NLR$c20050221
810  ##$aМоя жизнь с художниками «Улья» / Маревна (Мария Воробьева-
    Стебельская). – М., 2004.$bМаревна (М.Воробьева-Стебельская), свед. о псевд.,
    год рожд., биогр. данные
810  ##$aBritish Library$bMarevna
810  ##$aФНБ$bMarevna
810  ##$ahttp://www.artnet.com$bMarevna (Maria Vorobieva)
810  ##$ahttp://www.renoirinc.com$bMarevna (Maria Vorobieva)
815  ##$aРНБ ГАКрус$aБольшая советская энциклопедия-2$aВсемирный
    биографический словарь$aБиблиография русской зарубежной литературы /
    Л.А.Фостер. – Бостон, 1970$aРусское зарубежье : каталог...- СПб., 1997

```

Example 7 (Personal name used as subject)

Record status – n

Type of record – x

Type of entity – a

Encoding level – #

```

001  RU\NLR\AUTH\661385484
005  20050624100209.0
100  ##$a20050624arusy50#####ca0
102  ##$aRU$aGB$aFR
106  ##$a2$b1$c0
120  ##$aaa
152  ##$bnlr_sh
200  #0$aВиктория Федоровна$свеликая княгиня$f1876 – 1936
400  #0$5k$aВиктория Мелита$f1876 – 1936
500  #0$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661269264$5хххе$aКирилл Владимирович$свеликий
    князь$f1876 -1938

```

520 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661238026\$5xxxk\$aРомановы\$ссемья
 520 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\66193735\$5xxxk\$aГанноверская\$сдинастия английских
 королей\$f1714 – 1901
 686 ##\$2rubbk\$aT3(2)52-8\$vLBC/SL
 810 ##\$aPrincess Victoria Melita : Grand Duchess Cyril of Russia, 1876-1936. – Stroud
 (Gloucs.) ; Dover : Sutton, 1994.
 810 ##\$aДумин С.В. Романовы : императорский дом в изгнании : семейная хроника. –
 М., 1998.

Example 8 (Personal name used as subject)

Record status – n
 Type of record – x
 Type of entity – a
 Encoding level – #

001 RU\NLR\AUTH\661397409
 005 20040720122345.0
 100 ##\$a20040720arusy50#####ca0
 101 ##\$arus
 102 ##\$aRU\$aDE
 106 ##\$a2\$b1\$c0
 120 ##\$aba
 152 ##\$bnlr_sh
 200 #1\$aЯблоков\$bИ.Ф.\$gИван Федорович\$f1779 – 1843
 515 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661397414\$5z\$aАлександровка, русская колония
 (Потсдам, город; Германия)\$xИстория
 520 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661397436\$5g\$aЯблоковы\$срод
 550 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661397411\$5g\$aСолдаты\$yРоссия
 550 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661397412\$5g\$aРусские\$yГермания
 686 ##\$2rubbk\$aT3(4Г9=P)\$vLBC/SL
 686 ##\$2rubbk\$aЦ4,8(2)243.23\$vLBC/SL
 801 #0\$aRU\$bNLR\$c20040720
 810 ##\$aФлейман Е.А. Из России в Германию : от костромского села Палкина до
 деревни Александровки в Потсдаме. – Кострома, 2003.
 810 ##\$ahttp://www.petergen.com/history/alex.shtm

Example 9

Record 1: Personal name used as subject
 Record status – n
 Type of record – x
 Type of entity – a
 Encoding level – #

001 RU\NLR\AUTH\6653431
 005 20050526144922.0
 100 ##\$a20050526arusy50#####ca0
 101 ##\$aeng
 102 ##\$aGB
 106 ##\$a2\$b1
 120 ##\$aba
 152 ##\$bnlr_sh
 200 #1\$aСтивенсон\$gРоберт Льюис\$bР.Л.\$f1850 – 1894

400 #1\$aСтивенсон\$gРоберт Луис\$bП.Л.\$f1850 – 1894
 520 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661421123\$5g\$aБэлфур\$сдворянский род
 550 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\6645\$aАнглийская литература\$z19 в.
 686 ##\$2rubbk\$aIII5(4Вл)53-4Стивенсон\$vLBC/SL
 801 #0\$aRU\$bNLR\$c20050526
 810 ##\$aКраткая литературная энциклопедия. Т. 7. – М., 1972. стр. 178
 810 ##\$aГиляревский Р.С., Старостин Б.А. Иностранные имена и названия в русском
 тексте : справочник. – М., 1978.
 810 ##\$aСайт: http://www.foxdesign.ru/aphorism/author/a_stevenson_b.html

Record 2: Name/collective title used as subject

Record status – n

Type of record – x

Type of entity – i

Encoding level – #

001 RU\NLR\AUTH\661394324
 005 20050526174232.0
 100 ##\$a20050526arusy50#####ca0
 152 ##\$bnlr_sh
 245 ##\$1200#1\$aСтивенсон\$bП.Л.\$gРоберт Льюис\$f1850 –
 1894\$12351#\$aПриключенческие романы\$xТематика
 686 ##\$2rubbk\$aIII5(4Вл)53-4Стивенсон54\$vLBC/SL
 801 #0\$aRU\$bNLR\$c20050526
 810 ##\$aМигунов Р.Ш. Тайна капитана Флинта : о героях английского писателя Р.Л.
 Стивенсона. – Казань, 2004.

Example 1

Label	?????nx##b22?????###45##
001	n##81123456b
005	19810409121344.1
100	##\$a19810409aengy0103####ba0
101	##\$aeng
102	##\$aUS
106	##\$a0
150	##\$aa
152	##\$aACR2
210	02\$aPittsburgh Research Center
410	01\$aPittsburgh (Pa.).\$bPittsburgh Research Center
410	01\$aPittsburgh (Pa.).\$bResearch Center
410	01\$aUnited States.\$bBureau of Mines.\$bPittsburgh Research Center
510	02\$5a\$aPittsburgh Mining and Safety Research Center
801	#0\$aUS\$bLC\$c19810409
810	##\$aIts Practical ignition problems related to intrinsic safety, 1980: t.p. \$bPittsburgh Research Center, Pittsburgh, Pa.) caption t.p. (U.S. Department of Interior, Bureau of Mines, Pittsburgh Research Center, Pittsburgh, PA.)
830	##\$aPhone call to Bureau of Mines publications office, 1/23/80 (the name of the Pittsburgh Mining and Safety Research Center was changed to Pittsburgh Research Center in 1977)

```
Label      ?????cx##b2?????###45##  
001        frBN000000089  
005        19970616093559.1  
100        ##$a19831125afrey0103####ba0  
101        ##$aara$afre  
102        ##$aZZ  
106        ##$al  
150        ##$af  
152        ##$aAFNOR  
210        02$7ba0aba0y$8frefre$aInstitut du monde arabe  
300        0#$aCr  e en commun avec les Etats arabes et la R  publique fran  aise. Acte de fonda-  
tion sign   le 28-2-1980. D  cret portant reconnaissance d'utilit   publique du 14-10-1980  
340        ###a23 quai Saint-Bernard, 75005Paris. T  l. 46.34.25.25 (Standard) et 40.51.38.38  
(Informations)  
410        02$7ba0aba0a$8fareara$aMa'had al-'  lam al-arab    
410        02$7ba0yba0y$8frefre$aIMA  
710        02$7fa1yfa1y$8araara$a<Name in arabic script>  
801        #0$aFR$bBN$c19990224  
810        ##$aApprendre l'arabe / Institut du monde arabe, 1982  
810        ##$aJournal Officiel, 1980-10-15
```

Label	????cx##c22????###45##
001	frBN000030292
100	##\$a19831117afrey0103####ba0
101	##\$amul

102 ##\$aZZ
 106 ##\$a0
 150 ##\$af
 152 ##\$aAFNOR Z 44-060
 210 02\$aNations Unies
 300 0#\$aCharte des Nations Unies signée à San Francisco le 26-6-1945, ratifiée le 24-10-1945
 340 ##\$aNew York, NY. 10017 USA
 410 02\$aONU
 410 02\$aUN
 410 02\$aForenta Nationerna
 410 02\$aOrganisation des Nations Unies
 510 02\$0Après 1945, voir\$3frBN005626047\$5a\$aSociété des Nations
 710 02\$7ba0yba0y\$8freeng\$aUnited Nations
 710 02\$7ba0yba0y\$8frespa\$aNaciones Unidas
 801 #0\$aFR\$bBN\$c19990224

Example 4

Record status – n

Type of record – x

Type of entity – b

Encoding level – #

001 RU\NLR\AUTH\8810066664
 005 20050624172320.0
 100 ##\$a20050624arusy50#####ca0
 101 ##\$arus
 102 ##\$aRU
 106 ##\$a0\$b1\$c0
 150 ##\$ay\$b0
 152 ##\$aRCR
 210 02\$aМемориальная квартира Святослава Рихтера\$cМосква
 305 0#\$aC 1998 г. является частью музея, издания которого см. в каталоге:
 \$bГосударственный музей изобразительных искусств им. А.С. Пушкина (Москва)
 410 02\$aКвартира Святослава Рихтера\$cМосква
 510 02\$RU\NLR\AUTH\8833002\$5z0\$aГосударственный музей изобразительных
 искусств им. А.С. Пушкина\$cМосква
 801 #0\$aRU\$bNLR\$c20050624
 810 ##\$aМемориальная квартира Святослава Рихтера : путеводитель. – Москва, 2004.

Example 5

Record status – n

Type of record – x

Type of entity – b

Encoding level – #

001 RU\NLR\AUTH\8810060790
 005 20050204133610.0
 100 ##\$a20050204arusy50#####ca0
 101 ##\$arus
 102 ##\$aRU
 106 ##\$a0\$b1\$c0
 150 ##\$ay\$b1

152 ##\$aRCR
 210 12\$a≠NSB≠«≠NSE≠Системы безопасности≠NSB≠»≠NSE≠, научно-техническая
 конференция\$d13\$f2004\$eМосква
 305 0#\$aРаботала в рамках форума, издания которого см. в катало-
 ге:\$bМеждународный форум информатизации (2004 ; Москва)
 410 12\$з\$aТринадцатая научно-техническая конференция «Системы безопасности» –
 СБ-2004\$eМосква
 410 12\$з\$a13 научно-техническая конференция «Системы безопасности» –
 СБ-2004\$eМосква
 410 12\$5d\$aСБ-2004
 510 12\$3RUNLR\AUTH\8810059521\$з\$aМеждународный форум информатизации
 \$f2004\$eМосква
 801 #0\$aRU\$bNLR\$c20050204
 810 ##\$aМатериалы 13-й научно-технической конференции «...» ... – М.,
 2004.\$bПроходила 28-29 октября. По составу участников – международная. Часть
 докладов на английском языке

Example 6 (Printer)

Label 00000nx##b2200000###45##
 001 200711154
 100 ## \$a20000711ahrvy0103#####ba0
 152 ## \$aPPIAK
 210 00 \$aGhelen\$gJohann Leopold von [nasljednici]\$cWien
 300 0# \$aNasljednici tiskara Johanna Leopolda von Ghelena pod timimenom djeluju 1760. –
 1858.
 410 00\$aGhelen\$gJohann Leopold von [nasljednici]\$cBeč
 410 02 \$aGhelensche Erben\$cWien
 410 02 \$aLiterae A. Ghelenianae\$cVindobona
 410 02 \$aTypi nob. haered. de Ghelen\$cVienna
 410 02 \$aTypi Gheleniani\$cVienna
 801 #0 \$a HR\$b NSK
 810 ## \$a 500 Jahre, sv. 1, str. 226

Example 7 (Printer)

001 IT\EDIT16\CNCT000160
 005 20041108000000.0
 100 ##\$a19970101aitaa50#####ba0
 102 ##\$aIT
 152 ##\$aRICA
 210 00\$aSermartelli,\$g Bartolomeo\$c<1>
 340 ##\$aTipografo e libraio attivo a Firenze, figlio di Michelangelo de' Libri. Aggiunse al
 proprio nome il cognome del suo mecenate, che apparteneva alla famiglia Martelli.
 Cominciò a stampare nel 1553, ma fino al 1563 lavorò poco. Nel 1553 aveva casa e
 bottega presso il Castello, dal 1559 si spostò nelle vicinanze del Vescovado. M.
 l'11.4.1604. Dal 1591 gli successe nella direzione dell'Officina il figlio Michelangelo,
 che stampò fino al 1608.
 341 ##\$aFirenze\$b1553-1591\$c In la via nuova da San Giuliano presso al Castello\$cpresso
 il Vescovado\$dTestuggine
 341 ##\$aVenezia, 1574
 410 00\$aSermartellius\$gBartholomaeus\$c<1>\$3IT\Edit16\CNCT005648
 410 02\$aBartolomeo di Michelagnuolo S. M.\$3IT\Edit16\CNCT004089

517 ##\$3IT\Edit16\CNCM001081\$aTartaruga che tiene sul guscio una vela con giglio fiorentino. In cornice figurata\$cU132

517 ##\$3IT\Edit16\CNCM000202\$aTartaruga che tiene sul guscio una vela con giglio fiorentino. In cornice figurata\$cV78\$cZ1153

517 ##\$3IT\Edit16\CNCM000083\$aTartaruga che tiene sul guscio una vela con giglio fiorentino. In cornice figurata\$cV78\$cZ1153

517 ##\$3IT\Edit16\CNCM000084\$aTartaruga che tiene sul guscio una vela con giglio fiorentino. In cornice figurata\$cZ1152

517 ##\$3IT\Edit16\CNCM001267\$aTartaruga che tiene sul guscio una vela. In cornice figurata\$cU255

517 ##\$3IT\Edit16\CNCM000082\$aTartaruga che tiene una vela con giglio fiorentino\$cZ1154

517 ##\$3IT\Edit16\CNCM000614\$aTartaruga che tiene una vela con giglio fiorentino. In cornice figurata\$cA58\$cZ1155

801 #3\$aIT\$bICCU\$c2004108

810 ##\$aIndex Aureliensis Catalogus Librorum sedecimo saeculo impressorum. Tertia pars. Tomus III. Clavis typographorum librariorumque saeculi sedecimi, 1992. – IACLA\$bSermartelli, Bartolomeo

810 ##\$aMaracchi Biagiarelli, Berta. I Sermartelli, discendenti di Bartolomeo de' Libri. In: La Bibliofilia, 63 (1961), 3, p. 281-288. – MBSDB\$bSermartelli, Bartolomeo

810 ##\$aBorsa, Gedeon Clavis typographorum librariorumque italiae, 1465-1600., 1980. – BORSA \$bSermartelli, Bartolomeo

810 ##\$aShort-title Catalogue of Books printed in Italy and of Italian Books printed in other countries from 1465 to 1600 now in the British Library, 1986. – BMSTC\$bSermartelli, Bartolomeo

810 ##\$aCatalogue of Books printed on the Continent of Europe, 1501-1600 in Cambridge Libraries. Compiled by H. M. Adams, 1967 – ADCAM\$bSermartelli, Bartolomeo

810 ##\$aAscarelli, Fernanda – Menato, Marco. La tipografia del '500 in Italia, 1989 – AMTCI\$bSermartelli Bartolomeo sen.

810 ##\$aEDIT16\$uhttp://edit16.iccu.sbn.it\$bSermartelli, Bartolomeo\$c<1>

856 4# \$uhttp://edit16.iccu.sbn.it/scripts/iccu_ext.dll?fn=13&i=160

Example 8 (Corporate name used as subject)

Record status – n

Type of record – x

Type of entity – b

Encoding level – #

001 RU\NLR\AUTH\66609024

005 20040512164531.0

100 ##\$a20040512arusy50#####ca0

101 ##\$arus

102 ##\$aRU

106 ##\$a2

150 ##\$ay

152 ##\$bnlr_sh

210 02\$aОбъединенный институт ядерных исследований\$cДубна, город\$bЛаборатория нейтронной физики им. И.М. Франка\$xНаучно-исследовательская работа

686 ##\$2rubbk\$aB386.21e(2)л0-15\$vLBC/SL

801 #0\$aRU\$bNLR\$c20040512

810 ##\$aГодовой отчет Лаборатории нейтронной физики им. И.М. Франка. – Дубна,
2003.

Example 9 (Corporate name used as subject)

Record status – n

Type of record – x

Type of entity – b

Encoding level – #

001 RU\NLR\AUTH\661396065
005 20050727184911.0
100 ##\$a20050727arusy50#####ca0
101 ##\$arus
102 ##\$aRU
106 ##\$a2\$b1
152 ##\$bnlr_sh
210 12\$a≠NSB≠«≠NSE≠Песня в солдатской шинели≠NSB≠»≠NSE≠, общественный
фестиваль\$f2003\$eМосква, город
410 12\$z\$a≠NSB≠«≠NSE≠Песня в солдатской шинели≠NSB≠»≠NSE≠, фестиваль
фронтвой песни\$f2003\$eМосква, город
410 12\$z\$aФестиваль фронтвой песни\$f2003\$eМосква, город
550 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661397201\$5g\$aВоенные пес-
ни\$xПопуляризация\$yРоссийская Федерация
550 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661396064\$5g\$aМузыкальная самодеятельность\$xФестивали
\$yМосква, город
686 ##\$2rubbk\$aИЦ313(2)7-9м\$vlBC/SL
801 #0\$aRU\$bNLR\$c20050727
810 ##\$aФронтвая песня в строю поколений : фотоальбом... М., 2003.\$bТакже
называется Фестивалем фронтвой песни

Geographical names**Example 1** (Geographical name used as subject)

Record status – n

Type of record – x

Type of entity – c

Encoding level – #

001 RU\NLR\AUTH\661421160

005 20050705132343.0

100 ##\$a20050705arusy50#####ca0

152 ##\$bnlr_sh

215 ##\$aАмериканка, деревня (Приморский край)\$xИстория

686 ##\$2rubbk\$aT3(2P-4Пр-2H)\$vLBC/SL

801 #0\$aRU\$bNLR\$c20050705

810 ##\$aЗабытая Американка : (хроника первой половины XX века). – Владивосток, 2004.

Trademarks**Example 1**

Label ????cx##d22????###45##
 001 [Record identifier]
 100 ##\$a19990207afrey0103#####ba0
 102 ##\$aUS
 106 ##\$a2
 152 ##\$aBnF Marques
 216 ##\$aColumbia\$cmarque américaine
 340 ##\$aDates d'existence : 1890-
 340 ##\$aInitialement créée aux Etats-Unis, elle s'implante en Angleterre en 1928. En 1928, cette filiale connue sous le nom de British Columbia, se sépare de la maison mère américaine pour fonder EMI (Electrical Music Industries) en 1930 en association avec Gramophone. EMI déclare le label Columbia à la Chambre de commerce de Londres en privant la maison mère américaine du droit d'utiliser ce label. En 1945, la maison mère américaine Columbia crée le label CBS pour les exportations vers l'Europe et continue parallèlement à publier sous le label Columbia aux Etats-Unis. En 1991, Sony a acheté ce label pour Columbia
 416 ##\$aSony-Columbia
 510 ##\$0Propriété de\$3<authority record identifier>\$aSony Music Entertainment International
 510 ##\$0Avant 1991, est édité par\$3<authority record identifier>\$aCBS
 510 ##\$0A partir de 1991, est édité par\$3<authority record identifier>\$aSony Music Entertainment International
 510 ##\$0A partir de 1991, est édité par\$3<authority record identifier>\$aSony Music France
 510 ##\$0A partir de 1991, est édité par\$3<authority record identifier>\$aSony Music Entertainment Inc.
 510 ##\$0Est distribué par\$3<authority record identifier>\$aSony Music France
 516 ##\$3<authority record identifier>\$5h\$aColumbia Masterworks
 801 #0\$aFR\$bBN\$c20000107
 810 ##\$aThe American Record Label Book / Brian Rust, 1984

Translation of the note for non French speaking readers:

340 ##\$aCreated in USA, Columbia was established in 1928 in England. In 1928, this trademark known under the name British Columbia was detached from the American mother company to create EMI (Electrical Music Industries) in 1930, in partnership with Gramophone. EMI registered the label Columbia at the Chamber of Commerce of London, depriving the American parent company of the right to use this label. In 1945, Columbia, the American parent company created the label CBS for export to Europe and in parallel, continued to use the label Columbia in the USA. In 1991, Sony bought this label from Columbia

Family names**Example 1** (Family name used as subject)

Record status – n

Type of record – x

Type of entity – e

Encoding level – #

```

001  RU\NLR\AUTH\66963051
005  20050722151842.0
100  ##$a19990526arusy50#####ca0
102  ##$aRU
106  ##$a2$b1
152  ##$bnlr_sh
220  ##$aРомановы$сдинастия$f1613 – 1917
330  1#$aПод данной рубрикой собираются документы, повествующие о жизни и
    деятельности принадлежавших к династии Романовых царей и цариц,
    императоров и императриц, наследников престола
500  #0$3RU\NLR\AUTH\6620141$5h$aАлександр$dI$симператор российский$f1777 –
    1825
500  #0$3RU\NLR\AUTH\6620168$5h$aАлександр$dII$симператор российский$f1818
    – 1881
500  #0$3RU\NLR\AUTH\6620203$5h$aАлександр$dIII$симператор российский$f1845
    – 1894
500  #0$3RU\NLR\AUTH\6631815$5h$aАлексей Михайлович$сцарь русский$f1629 –
    1676
500  #0$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661232258$5h$aАлександра Федоровна$симператрица
    российская$f1872 – 1918
500  #0$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661268197$5h$aАлексей$сцесаревич$f1904 – 1918
500  #0$3RU\NLR\AUTH\6631838$5h$aАлексей Петрович$сцаревич$f1690 – 1718
500  #0$3RU\NLR\AUTH\6651998$5h$aАнна Иоанновна$симператрица
    российская$f1693 – 1740
500  #0$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661249830$5h$aЕкатерина$dI$симператрица
    российская$f1684 – 1727
500  #0$3RU\NLR\AUTH\66407813$5h$aЕкатерина$dII$симператрица
    российская$f1729 – 1796
500  #0$3RU\NLR\AUTH\66409709$5h$aЕлизавета Алексеевна$симператрица
    российская$f1779 – 1826
500  #0$3RU\NLR\AUTH\66409746$5h$aЕлизавета Петровна$симператрица
    российская$f1709 – 1761
500  #0$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661048709$5h$aИван$dVI$симператор российский$f1740 –
    1764
500  #0$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661248014$5h$aМария Федоровна$симператрица
    российская$f1759 – 1828
500  #0$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661348018$5h$aМария Федоровна$симператрица
    российская$f1847 – 1928
500  #0$3RU\NLR\AUTH\66710006$5h$aМихаил Федорович$сцарь русский$f1596 –
    1645
500  #0$3RU\NLR\AUTH\66761470$5h$aНиколай$dI$симператор российский$f1796 –
    1855
500  #0$3RU\NLR\AUTH\66761509$5h$aНиколай$dII$симператор российский$f1868 –
    1918

```


500 #0\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\66181028\$5h\$aПавел\$dI\$симператор российский\$f1754 –
1801

500 #0\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\66180638\$5h\$aПетр\$dI\$симператор российский\$f1672 – 1725

500 #0\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\66865395\$5h\$aПетр\$dII\$симператор российский\$f1715 –
1730

500 #0\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661333900\$5h\$aПетр\$dIII\$симператор российский\$f1728 –
1762

500 #0\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661236494\$5h\$aСофья Алексеевна\$сцаревна русская\$f1657 –
1704

500 #0\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661302958\$5h\$aФедор Алексеевич\$сцарь русский\$f1661 –
1682

515 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\66979780\$5g\$aРоссия\$xИстория

550 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\661286445\$5g\$aМонархи\$уРоссия

686 ##\$2rubbk\$aT214(2)0-1\$vLBC/SL

801 #0\$aRU\$bNLR\$c19990526

801 #2\$aRU\$bNLR\$c20050722

Form, Genre or Physical Characteristics

Example 1

Label NNNNNnx##122NNNNN###45##
001 Y0 89001283
100 ##\$a19961024aengy01#####ba0
152 ##\$bgsafd
280 ##\$aFolklore
330 1#\$aUse for tales belonging to an oral tradition and handed down through the
generations. Examples of folklore may belong to a more specific genre, e.g.,Fables,
Fairy tales, Legends. Where necessary, prefer the access point for that genre.
480 ##\$aFolk lore
480 ##\$aFolk tales
480 ##\$aTales
550 ##\$2lc\$5n\$aFolk lore
550 ##\$2lc\$5n\$aTales
801 #0\$aGB\$bUk\$c19961025
801 #1\$aGB\$bUk\$c19961025
810 ##\$aOlderr

Titles

Example 1

Label ????cx##f22????###45##
 001 frBN002495742
 100 ##\$a19800508afrey0103#####ba0
 101 ##\$amul
 102 ##\$aZZ
 106 ##\$a1
 152 ##\$aAFNOR Z 44-061
 230 ##\$8freger\$aTill Eulenspiegel
 300 0#\$aAttribué à Thomas Murner par certains, à Johannes Pauli par d'autres, à Hermann Bote par P. Honegger depuis la découverte et la publ. de nouveaux fragments en 1973. Pour ces auteurs, consulter le Fichier d'autorité des auteurs personnes physiques sous les vedettes : Murner, Thomas ; Pauli, Johannes ; Bote, Hermann
 300 0#\$aOeuvre populaire d'origine germanique écrite, selon certains, en haut-allemand vers 1500, selon d'autres, version antérieure en bas-allemand vers 1450. – 1re éd. connue : Strasbourg ca 1510 ("fragment Honegger" ou "petit fragment" et "fragment Hucker" ou "grand fragment")
 300 0#\$aA connu dès le XVIe s. un succès international à travers des trad. en flamand (Anvers ca 1525), français (Paris, 1530 ; 13 éd. connues du XVIe s.), anglais et polonais. – Adaptation libre en langue française en 1867 par le belge Charles De Coster
 330 0#\$aPour les éd. de De Coster, entrée principale sous le titre uniforme, entrée secondaire à l'auteur
 430 ##\$8fredut\$aAardige leven van Thijl Uilenspiegel
 430 ##\$8fredut\$aAlte und neue Geschichten von Till Eulenspiegel
 430 ##\$aDyll Eulenspiegel
 430 ##\$aDyl Uilenspiegel
 430 ##\$aEulenspiegel
 430 ##\$8freger\$a~~NSB~~Der ~~NSE~~Ganz neue, wieder erstandene Eulenspiegel
 430 ##\$8freger\$a~~NSB~~Ein ~~NSE~~Kurtzweilig lesen von Dil Uilenspiegel
 430 ##\$8freger\$a~~NSB~~Ein ~~NSE~~Kurtzweilig lesen vom Till Uilenspiegel
 430 ##\$8freger\$a~~NSB~~Ein ~~NSE~~Kurzweilig Buch von Till Eulenspiegel
 430 ##\$8freger\$aLeben und Meinungen des Till Eulenspiegel
 430 ##\$8freger\$aLeben und sonderbare Thaten Till Eulenspiegels
 430 ##\$aLeven van Thyl Uilenspiegel
 430 ##\$aLustige Historien, Oder Merkwürdiges Leben, Thaten und Reisen des Welbekandten Tyll Eulenspiegels
 430 ##\$8frelat\$aNoctuae speculum
 430 ##\$a~~NSB~~Die ~~NSE~~Schönsten Historien von Till Eulenspiegel
 430 ##\$aSeltsame Possen des Till Eulenspiegel
 430 ##\$aTill Uilenspiegel
 430 ##\$aTilu BuhoglindÆa
 430 ##\$aToatÆa viaŌta isteŌtiiŌle Ōsi faptele minunatuluiu Tilu BuhoglindÆa
 430 ##\$aTyel Uilenspiegel
 Etc.
 530 ##\$3frBN004610727\$8frepol\$aFraszki nowe Sowizrzaøowe
 530 ##\$3frBN004609358\$8frepol\$aFraszki Sowizrzaøa nowego
 530 ##\$3frBN004610830\$8frepol\$aSowizrzaø nowy
 730 ##\$8frepol\$aSowizrzaø
 730 ##\$8fredan\$aUglspil
 801 #0\$aFR\$bBN\$c20000224
 810 ##\$aIFLA, Anonymous classics, 1978

810 ##\$aUlenspiegel, de sa vie, de ses oeuvres : éd. critique du plus ancien Ulespiègle
français du XVIe s. / Jelle Koopmans et Paul Verhuyck, 1988
810 ##\$aDLL ; Laffont Bompiani, Oeuvres
810 ##\$aBN Cat. gén. 1960-1969

Example 2

Record status – n

Type of record – x

Type of entity – f

Encoding level – #

001 RU\NLR\AUTH\559005
005 20050415154813.0
100 ##\$a19961122arusy50#####ca0
101 ##\$achu
152 ##\$aRCR
230 ##\$aСлово о полку Игореве
300 0##\$aПамятник древнерусской литературы конца 12 в.
430 ##\$aСлово о походе Игоря Святославовича
430 ##\$aСлово о полку Игоревом, Игоря Святославовича внука Олегова
430 ##\$aИроическая песнь о походе на половцев удельного князя Новгорода-
Сиверскаго Игоря Святославича, писанная старинным русским языком в исходе
XII столетия с переложением на употребимое ныне наречие
430 ##\$8rusukr\$aСлово о полку Игоревім
430 ##\$aПеснь о полку Игореве
730 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\559468\$7ca0yba0a\$aSlovo o polku Igoreve
801 #0\$aRU\$bNLR\$c19961122
801 #2\$aRU\$bNLR\$c20050415
810 ##\$aИроическая песнь о походе половцов удельного князя Новгорода-
Сиверскаго Игоря Святославича, писанная старинным русским языком в исходе
XII столетия с переложением на употребимое ныне наречие. – М., 1800.
810 ##\$a«Слово о полку Игореве» : историко-литературный очерк / Лихачев Д.С. –
М., 1976.
810 ##\$aСлово о полку Игореве : пер. на англ. и коммент. В.В.Набокова. – СПб.,
2004.\$bвариантная форма «Песнь о полку Игореве»

Example 3 (Title used as subject)

Record status – n

Type of record – x

Type of entity – f

Encoding level – #

001 RU\NLR\AUTH\661380498
005 20050705093151.0
100 ##\$a20050705arusy50#####ca0
101 ##\$abua
152 ##\$bnlr_sh
230 ##\$a#NSB#«#NSE#Гэсэриада#NSB#»#NSE#lэпический цикл сказаний о
Гэсэр-хане\$qБурятская версия
550 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\66168961\$5g\$aЭпос бурятский
686 ##\$2rubbk\$aIII3(251.7=Бу)-611\$vLBC/SL
801 #0\$aRU\$bNLR\$c20050705

810 ##\$aХундаева, Елизавета Очировна. Бурятский эпос о Гэсэре : связи и поэтика. –
Улан-Удэ, 1999.

Example 4 (Name/Title used as subject)

Record status – n

Type of record – x

Type of entity – h

Encoding level – #

001 RU\NLR\AUTH\661198905

005 20050802100656.0

100 ##\$a20050802arusy50#####ca0

152 ##\$bnlr_sh

240 ##\$1200#1\$aЧайковский\$gПетр Ильич\$bП.И.\$f1840 –
1893\$1230##\$aСимфония\$h6

686 ##\$2rubbk\$aIII313(2P=Рус)51-81Чайковский445\$vLBC/SL

801 #0\$aRU\$bNLR\$c20050802

810 ##\$aП. Чайковский : VI-я симфония : (H-moll) : (Symphonie pathétique, op. 74). –
М., 1912.

Topical Subjects

Example 1

Label ????cx##j22????###45##
 001 frBN009045267
 005 19980722222222.2
 100 ##\$a19930701afrey0103####ba0
 152 ##\$bRAMEAU
 250 ##\$aMariage mixte
 330 1#\$aSous cette vedette, on trouve les ouvrages généraux sur les mariages ou autres types d'unions entre personnes de religions, confessions religieuses, races et groupes ethniques différents. Les ouvrages sur les mariages entre personnes de religions ou de confessions religieuses différentes se trouvent sous la vedette Mariage interreligieux. Les ouvrages sur les mariages entre personnes de races ou ethnies différentes se trouvent sous la vedette Mariage interethnique
 450 ##\$aCouple mixte
 450 ##\$aCouples mixtes
 450 ##\$aIntermariage
 450 ##\$aMariages mixtes
 450 ##\$aMixité conjugale
 450 ##\$aUnions mixtes
 550 ##\$3frBN00171107X\$5h\$aMariage interethnique
 550 ##\$3frBN009059651\$5h\$aMariage international
 550 ##\$3frBN001711062\$5h\$aMariage interreligieux
 550 ##\$3frBN001533179\$5g\$aMariage
 801 #0\$aFR\$bBN\$c19990226
 825 ##\$8engeng\$aIntermarriage (May Subd Geog)\$vLCSH, 1996-12
 825 ##\$aNote sous Mariage interreligieux
 825 ##\$aNote sous Mariage interethnique

Example 2

Record status – n
 Type of record – x
 Type of entity – j
 Encoding level – #
 001 RU\NLR\AUTH\66631031
 005 20050728150504.0
 100 ##\$a19980924arusy50#####ca0
 152 ##\$bnlr_sh
 250 ##\$aЛитературное мастерство
 450 ##\$5z\$aПисательское мастерство
 550 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\66631032\$5h\$aЛитературная технология
 550 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\6669746\$5g\$aЛитературное творчество
 550 ##\$3RU\NLR\AUTH\6622999\$5g\$aЛитература\$xТеория
 686 ##\$2rubbk\$aIII402.3\$vLBC/SL
 801 #0\$aRU\$bNLR\$c19980924
 810 ##\$aХристианский детский писатель : материалы литературного семинара. – М., 2004.\$bvвыявлена вариантная форма – писательское мастерство

Place and Date of Publication, Performance, Provenance, ect.**Example 1**

Label ?????nx##k22?????###45##
 001 210717144
 100 ## \$a20001206ahrvy0103####ba0
 102 ## \$aIT
 123 ## \$de0122000\$see0122000\$fn0452600\$gn0452600
 152 ## \$aPPIAK
 160 ## \$ae-it
 260 ## \$8hrvita\$aItalija\$dVenezia
 460 ## \$8hrvhrv\$aItalija\$dBenetki
 460 ## \$8hrvlat\$aItalija\$dVinegia
 460 ## \$8hrvlat \$aItalija\$bVenetia
 460 ## \$8hrvlat\$aItalija\$bUrbs Veneta
 460 ## \$aItalija\$bMneti
 460 ## \$aItalija\$bBneci
 460 ## \$aItalija\$bMleti
 460 ## \$aItalija\$bMleczi
 460 ## \$aItalija\$bMletci
 801 #0 \$aHR\$bNSK
 810 ## \$aOrbis Latinus, sv. 3, str. 587

Example 2

Label ?????nx##k22?????###45##
 001 210704046
 100 ## \$a20001206ahrvy0103####ba0
 102 ## \$aHR
 123 ##\$de0184200\$see0184200\$fn0453300\$gn0453300
 152 ## \$aPPIAK
 160 ## \$ae-ci
 260 ## \$8hrvhrv\$aHrvatska\$dOsijek
 460 ## \$8hrvlat\$aHrvatska\$dMursa
 460 ## \$8hrvlat\$aHrvatska\$dEssekinum
 460 ## \$8hrvhun\$aHrvatska\$dEssek
 460 ## \$aHrvatska\$dEszekinum
 460 ## \$aHrvatska\$dEssechium
 460 ## \$aHrvatska\$dMetropolis Slavoniae
 460 ## \$aHrvatska\$dOsik
 460 ## \$aHrvatska\$dOssik
 460 ## \$aHrvatska\$dEsekinum
 801 #0 \$aHR
 810 ## \$aOrbis Latinus

Printer/Publisher Devices**Example 1**

001 IT\ICCU\CNCM\CNCM000084
005 20010130000000.0
100 ##\$a19990312citaa50#####ba0
152 ##\$aGuida SBN. Libro antico
217 ##\$aTartaruga che tiene sul guscio una vela con giglio fiorentino. In cornice figurata\$bFestina lente\$cZ1152\$d4 x 4,8 cm\$f1574-1599\$gTartaruga\$gVela\$gGiglio
510 ##\$3IT\ICCU\CNCT\CNCT000160\$aSermartelli, Bartolomeo\$c<1>
510 ##\$3IT\ICCU\CNCT\CNCT000045\$aSermartelli, Michelangelo
801 #3\$aIT\$bICCU\$c20070102
810 ##\$aZappella, Giuseppina, Le marche dei tipografi e degli editori italiani del cinquecento
810 ##\$aEDIT16\$uhttp://edit16.iccu.sbn.it
856 4#\$uhttp://edit16.iccu.sbn.it/scripts/iccu_ext.dll?fn=63&i=84

APPENDIX O: FORMAT CHANGES

This appendix summarizes changes to the format. New page(s) will be issued for this section with each update to the format.

2nd revised and enlarged edition (2001)

This list consists of changes to the format since the publication of *UNIMARC/Authorities: Universal format for authorities* in 1991. The changes resulted from the meetings of the Permanent UNIMARC Committee from 1997- 1999. The amendments fall into the following categories:

1. clearer presentation of the data in a manner which is consistent with the *UNIMARC Manual: Bibliographic Format*;
2. consistency with the recommendations of the IFLA UBCIM Working Group on Minimal Level Authority Records and ISADN, as published in *Mandatory elements for Internationally Shared Resource Authority Records*. IFLA/UBCIM, 1998;
3. extension of the format to facilitate links to electronic material and promote international exchange of authority data

Deleted paragraphs

Alternative Script data: USA example replaced by new example

Explanatory notes: Note (5) was deleted and subsequent notes were renumbered.

New paragraphs

Foreword to the second edition

New fields

- 035 Control number of record derived from other sources
- 101 Language of the Entity
- 102 Nationality of the Entity
- 106 Coded Data Field: Personal/Corporate/Family Name/Trademark used as Subject Heading
- 120 Coded Data Field: Personal Names
- 123 Coded Data Field: Geographic Names
- 216 Heading – Trademark
- 260 Heading – Place Access
- 280 Heading – Form, Genre or Physical Characteristics
- 340 Biography and Activity Note
- 356 Geographical Notes
- 416 See Reference Tracing – Trademark
- 460 See Reference Tracing – Place Access
- 480 See Reference Tracing – Form, Genre or Physical Characteristics
- 516 See Also Reference Tracing – Trademark
- 560 Also Reference Tracing – Place Access
- 580 Also Reference Tracing – Form, Genre or Physical Characteristics
- 716 Linking Heading- Trademark
- 760 Linking Heading – Place Access
- 780 Linking Heading – Form, Genre or Physical Characteristics
- 836 Replaced Heading Information

- 856 Electronic Location and Access
886 Data not Converted from Source Format

Changes in name and function of field

- 150 Coded Data Field for Corporate Names

New subfields/values

Leader: Character position 9 defined: type of entity

100 \$a Character position 12 transliteration table additional codes defined: d,e,f

100 \$a Character position 13-16 character set: additional codes defined, 08-10

100 \$a Character position 13-16 character set: additional code reserved, 11

100 \$a Character position 21-22 language of cataloguing: additional codes defined, ma, mb,

100 \$a Character position 23 defined: direction of script of cataloguing

Control Subfield \$7: name changed to "Script of cataloguing and script of the base heading"
Character positions 4-7 defined as script of the base heading.

Control Subfield \$8: name changed to "Language of cataloguing and language of the base heading"
Character positions 3-5 defined as language of the base heading.

2-- \$j Form Subdivision

4-- \$j Form Subdivision

5-- \$j Form Subdivision

7-- \$j Form Subdivision

Change to status

Control subfield \$3 permitted for use in 3-- block

Control subfield \$8 permitted for use in 2-- block

3rd edition (2009)

This list consists of changes to the format since the publication of *UNIMARC Manual: Authorities Format*, 2nd revised and enlarged edition in 2001. The changes resulted from the meetings of the Permanent UNIMARC Committee from 2006-2009, and corrections published in the online edition at <http://archive.ifla.org/VI/8/projects/UNIMARC-AuthoritiesFormat.pdf>.

The amendments fall into the following categories:

1. consistency with the 3rd edition of *UNIMARC Manual: Bibliographic Format*;
2. consistency with the 2nd edition of *Guidelines for Authority and Reference Records* (GARR);
3. consistency with the recommendations of the IFLA Working Group on Functional Requirements and Numbering of Authority Records (FRANAR) (1999-2009), and entity-relationship model published in *Functional Requirements for Authority Data: A Conceptual Model* (2009);
4. consistency with definitions of entities published in the *Statement of International Cataloguing Principles* (2009) adopted through a series of IFLA Meetings of Experts on an International Cataloguing Code (IME ICC) (2003-2007);
5. extension of the format to facilitate recording identifiers, music incipit, authority data for antiquarian resources, and promote international exchange of authority data.

Changes in terminology: naming of record types, blocks, fields and code values

Access Point: change for Heading throughout the Manual

Definitions, Record Types

Definitions, Access Point Types

Record Label, 9/Type of entity

f = title

g = collective title

h = name/title

i = name/collective title

106 Coded Data Field: Personal/Corporate/Family Name/Trademark/Printer/Publisher

Device used as Subject Access Point

154 Coded Data Field: Title

Control Subfields:

\$7 Script of Cataloguing and Script of the Base Access point

\$8 Language of Cataloguing and Language of the Base Access Point

2-- Authorized Access Point Block

230 Authorized Access Point - Title

235 Authorized Access Point - Collective Title

245 Authorized Access Point - Name/Collective Title

4-- Variant Access Point Block

430 Variant Access Point - Title

445 Variant Access Point - Name/Collective Title

5-- Related Access Point Block

530 Related Access Point - Title

545 Related Access Point - Name/Collective Title

7-- Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script Block

730 Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script - Title

745 Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script - Name/Collective Title

835 Deleted Access Point Information

836 Replaced Access Point Information

Deleted paragraphs

Explanatory Notes, (5)

005 Version Identifier, Field Definition, sentences after the first one.

Updated paragraphs

Introduction, Purpose and Scope

Introduction, Standards

Introduction, Other Related Documents

Definitions, introductory paragraph

152, Notes on Field Contents

675, Notes on Field Contents

New paragraphs

Foreword to the Third Edition

Two paragraphs (fifth and sixth) in the Foreword to the First Edition (dropped by omission in the second edition)

Definitions, Controlled Access Point

Guidelines for Use, Different Rule Data

2-- fields, Notes on Field Contents, Subfields forming the base access point

340 Biography and Activity Note, History

4-- Notes on Field Contents: rewording of the text

Obsolete field

015 International Standard Authority Data Number

New fields

003 Persistent Record Identifier

036 Music Incipit

050 International Standard Text Code (ISTC)

051 International Standard Musical Work Code (ISWC)

052 International Standard Audiovisual Number (ISAN)

061 International Standard Recording Code (ISRC)

217 Authorized Access Point - Printer/Publisher Device

243 Authorized Access Point - Conventional Name/Title for Legal and Religious Texts

341 Activity Note Pertaining to Printer/Publisher

417 Variant Access Point - Printer/Publisher Device

443 Variant Access Point - Conventional Name/Title for Legal and Religious Texts

517 Related Access Point - Printer/Publisher Device

543 Related Access Point - Conventional Name/Title for Legal and Religious Texts

640 Place(s) and Date(s) Associated with the Entity

717 Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script - Printer/Publisher Device

743 Authorized Access Point in Other Language and/or Script - Conventional Name/ Title for Legal and Religious Texts

Changes in name and function of block/field/subfield

101 \$a Language of or language used by the entity

106 Coded Data Field: Personal/Corporate/Family Name/Trademark/Printer/Publisher Device Used As Subject Access Point

Control Subfields:

\$2 System Code

\$3	Authority Record Identifier
\$5	Relationship Control
\$5	Relationship Control, Character position 0, Name Relationship Code
-40, B)	Subfields: Standard subfields technique, \$a Name
-45, B)	Subfields: Standard subfields technique, \$a Name
-50 \$a	Topical subject or subject category
-50 \$x	Topical subdivision or subject category subdivision text
260	Preferred Access Point - Place and Date of Publication, Performance, Provenance, etc.
-60	\$c Intermediate political jurisdiction
460	Variant Access Point - Place and Date of Publication, Performance, Provenance, etc.
560	Related Access Point - Place and Date of Publication, Performance, Provenance, etc.
6--	Classification and Entity History Block
760	Authorized Access Point - Place and Date of Publication, Performance, Provenance, etc.

Updated definition/scope

102	Nationality of the Entity
102	\$a Country of nationality
152	\$a Cataloguing system
152	\$b Subject system
-10,	Indicator 1
250	Authorized Access Point - Topical Subject
340	Biography and Activity Note
450	Variant Access Point - Topical Subject
675	Universal Decimal Classification (UDC)
676	Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC)
680	Library of Congress Classification (LCC)
801 \$b	Agency
856	Electronic Location and Access
886 \$a	Tag of the source format field
886 \$b	Indicators and subfields of the source format field

New indicators and subfields/values

101 \$c	Language of the expression
106 \$b	Coded data – use in subject heading as base access point or as subdivision
106 \$c	Coded data – use in topical subject access point with a geographical subdivision
150 \$b	Conference or meeting code
152 \$c	System code for musical notation
154 \$a/1	Type of Entity Code

Control Subfields:

\$1	Linking Data
\$5	Relationship Control, Character position 0, Name Relationship Code: additional codes defined
\$5	Relationship Control, Character position 1, Reference Suppression Code: additional code defined, x
\$5	Relationship Control, Character position 2, Relationship Code for Works
\$5	Relationship Control, Character position 3, Relationship Code for Agents
-20 \$c	Type of family
-20 \$d	Places associated with the family
-50 \$n	Subject category code
-50 \$m	Subject category subdivision code

-60	Indicator 1 & Indicator 2
-60	subfields \$e - \$o
-80	Indicator 2
340 \$b	Activity note
340 \$p	Affiliation/Address
801 \$2	System code

Change to status

102	\$a Country of nationality, code 'XX' (unknown)
235	Embedded in -45 fields
440, A)	Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique, 2-- embedded fields
445, A)	Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique, 2-- embedded fields
540, A)	Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique, 2-- embedded fields
545, A)	Subfields: Embedded Fields Technique, 2-- embedded fields
Control subfield \$1 permitted for use in 2--, 4--, 5-- and 7-- block fields (235, and -40 and -45 fields)	

Examples

Corrections to existing and addition of new examples